

THE  
R U D I M E N T S  
OF THE

Latin Tongue;

OR

*A plain and easy Introduction*

*Samuel Johnson's Dictionary*  
*December the 8. 1749*  
Latin Grammar;

Wherein

The PRINCIPLES of the LANGUAGE  
are Methodically digested both in  
ENGLISH and LATIN;

WITH

*Useful* NOTES and Observations, *containing*  
the TERMS of GRAMMAR, *and further*  
*improving its* RULES.

By THO. RUDDIMAN, M.A.

The Eighth Edition corrected.

EDINBURGH,

Printed and sold by the AUTHOR, and the Book-  
sellers there. M. DCC. XXXIX.

EdueT 20917.39.8

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
JANUARY 25, 1924

Tong  
re n  
End  
writte  
uago  
her  
r;  
scu  
nd e  
Mast  
ed So  
lerta





*Paul* THE *Method*  
P R E F A C E.

**A**MONG the several Instructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue commonly taught in our Schools, are many ways insufficient, in respect to the End proposed by them; That the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is designed to teach; That the other is defective, particularly in the *Syn-*  
tax; And that the Rules of both are often obscure and intricate, and sometimes false and erroneous. Whereupon some knowing Masters of that Profession, by their repeated Sollicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the Compiling of a new *Rudiments*,  
which

which they conceived might in a great Measure be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and so contrived as to bring down its *Rules* to the Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make them enter with more Ease and Familiarity into his Mind. This is the End I had in View: With what Success it has been prosecuted, is a Province for others, not me, to determine. However, if any thing inclines me to hope its Acceptance in the World, it is owing to the kind Assistance I have had from time to time of the above mentioned and other Gentlemen, as the Duty of their respective Employments would permit them. What discouraged me most in this Undertaking, was the different Opinions of *Grammarians*, with the sharp Contests and Disputes they have had about the Method of *Instruction*, and the most proper Way to communicate the *Latin* Tongue to others with the greatest Facility and Expedition. It would be almost an endless Task to reckon up the various *Schemes* that have been projected for that Purpose. Therefore I shall engage no farther in the Subject, than as it seems necessary to give my Reader a clear and distinct View of the Reasons that determined me to the Method I have followed.

I have

## The P R E F A C E.

v

I have long observed, that those of our Country, whose Business it is to direct the Studies of Youth, are greatly divided about what an *Introduction to Latin Grammar* ought properly to contain, and in what Language its Precepts should be conveyed. Some are for contracting it into as narrow Limits as is possible, and not to burthen the Memory of the Learner with any Thing but what is essential and absolutely necessary: While others contend, that this is too general, and not sufficient to direct his Practice, without the Addition of more particular Rules. Again, tho' the greater Part incline to have the first *Principles of Grammar* communicated in a known Language, there are not a few, and of these some Persons of Distinction, who are still for retaining them in *Latin*, which, tho' attended at first with more Difficulty, makes (in their Judgment) a more lasting Impression on the Mind, and carries the Learner more directly to the Habit of speaking *Latin*, a Practice much used in our Schools. It appeared next to an Impossibility to satisfy so many different Opinions: However, the Method I have taken seems to bid fairest for it. For I have reduced the *Substance* of these *Rudiments* into a sort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin*

an

an *English* Version, leaving the Master to his own Choice and Discretion which to use. And that none may complain that the *Text* is too compendious, I have subjoined large *Notes*, which I humbly conceive will supply that Defect.

To render my Design of more general Use, I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient, which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby swelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wished, or some perhaps will excuse; tho' the Reasons are so obvious that it is needless to relate them. I confess I have been larger in the *Notes* than the Nature of a *Rudiments* seemed to require: But, as I presume there is nothing in them but what may be useful either to Master or Scholar, and since it was never my Intention that they should be all taught, or any of them with the same Care as the *Essential Parts*, I thought they might the more easily be dispensed with. There is one Thing more which has considerably increased them, *viz.* the *Remarks* I have added on *English Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs*; which I judged useful on a double Account: *First*, As they serve to illustrate *Latin Grammar*, the first Notions and Impressions whereof we receive

receive from the Language we our selves speak. *Secondly*, Because the greater Number of those who are taught the *Latin* Tongue, reap little other Benefit from it, than as it enables them to speak and write *English* with the greater Exactness, I supposed it would not be amiss to throw in something in order to that End.

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my Undertaking, all I shall say of the particular Management of it, is, that I have laboured all along to render every Thing as plain and easy as I possibly could, considering with a tender Regard for whose Benefit it is designed. I have consulted the best *Grammarians* both Ancient and Modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpose; tho' not contenting my self with their bare Authority, I frequently had Recourse to the Fountain itself, I mean the purest Writers of the *Latin* Tongue. As thus I have been solicitous to avoid *Error*, so I have been cautious not to incur the Censure of having affected *Novelty*, and therefore have receded no farther from the common *Systems*, than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the usual *Terms* of *Art*, which have so long obtained in the Schools, tho' some.



sometimes I have taken the Liberty, as I saw Occasion for it, to explain them my own Way. That I might lay no more Weight on the Memories of Children than they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as small a Number as the Subject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was consistent with Perspicuity; leaving it to the Industry of the Teacher to explain them more fully, as he shall find necessary; without which no *Rules* can be sufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wished; but I frankly own that I do not see how it can be made much shorter, without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules*. However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have subjoined a more *Compendious Syntax*, consisting only of a few *Fundamental Rules*, which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Discretion of the Master shall direct him.

THE



THE  
 RUDIMENTS  
 OF THE

Latin Tongue :

O R,

A plain and easy Introduction

T O

Latin Grammar.

PARS PRIMA. De Literis & Syllabis.

PART FIRST. Of Letters and Syllables.

Magister.

Q UOT sunt Literæ apud Latinos?

Discipulus. Quinque & viginti; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

S. In Vocales & Consonantes.

M. Quot sunt Vocales?

S. Sex; a, e, i, o, u, y.

Master.

H OW many Letters are there among the Latins?

Scholar. Five and twenty; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. How are they divided?

S. Into Vowels and Consonants.

M. How many Vowels are there?

S. Six; a, e, i, o, u, y.

A M. Quot

## 2 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue, Part I

M. Quot sunt Consonantes?

D. Novemdecim; *b, c, d, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. Quot sunt Diphthongi?

D. Quinque; *ae, [vel æ] oe, [vel æ] au, eu, ei; ut, ætas, vel ætas, poena, vel poena, audio, euge, bei.*

M. How many Consonants are there?

S. Nineteen; *b, c, d, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. How many Diphthongs are there?

S. Five; *ae, [or æ] oe, [æ] au, eu, ei; as, ætas, ætas, poena, or poena, audio, euge, bei.*

### N O T E S.

GRAMMAR is the Art of speaking any Language rightly, as *Greek, Latin, English, &c.*

*Latin Grammar* is The Art of speaking rightly the *Latin Tongue*.

The RUDIMENTS of that Grammar Are plain and easy Instructions teaching Beginners the first Principles, or the most common and necessary Rules of *Latin*.

The Rudiments may be reduced to these four Heads. I. Treating of Letters. II. Of Syllables. III. Of Words. IV. Of Sentences.

These are naturally made up one of another; for one or more Letters make a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A Letter is A Mark or Character representing an uncompounded Sound. *K, T, Z,* are only to be found in Words originally *Greek*, and *H* by itself is not accounted a Letter, but a Breathing.

We reckon the *J* called *Jod* [or *Je*] and the *V* called *Van*, two Letters distinct from *I* and *U*, because not only their Figures, but their Powers and Sounds are quite different; *J* sounding like *G* before *E*, and *V* almost like *U*.

A Vowel is A Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by itself.

A Consonant is A Letter that cannot sound without a Vowel.

A Syllable is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel: And any of the six Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Consonants before or after it, make a Syllable.

There are for the most Part as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it. Only there are two kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwise. 1. When *U* with any other Vowel comes after *G, Q* or *S*, as in *Liquor, Qui, Suades*; where the Sound of the *U* vanishes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong, or double Vowel.

A Diphthong is A Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, both of them are heard.

Of Diphthongs there are Proper, viz. *au, eu, ei*, in which both Vowels are heard; and two Improper, viz. *a, æ*, in which the *a* and *æ* are not heard but they are pronounced as a simple.

Some, not without Reason, to these five Diphthongs add other three; *ai* in *Maia*, *vi* in *Trela*, *yi* or *ni* in *Harpyia* or *Harpyia*.

# Part II. of Words.

3

## PARS SECUNDA.

## PART SECOND.

### De Dictionibus.

### Of Words.

**M. Q**uot sunt Partes Or-  
rationis?

**M. H**ow many Parts of  
Speech are there?

**D.** Octo; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium, Adverbium, Prepositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

**S.** Eight; *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.*

**M.** Quomodo dividuntur?

**M.** How are they divided?

**D.** In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.

**S.** Into Declinable and Indeclinable.

**M.** Quot sunt Declinabiles?

**M.** How many are Declinables?

**D.** Quatuor; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.*

**S.** Four; *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.*

**M.** Quot sunt Indeclinabiles?

**M.** How many are Indeclinables?

**D.** Item quatuor; *Adverbium, Prepositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

**S.** Likewise Four; *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.*

A WORD [*Vox* or *dictio*] is one or more syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight Classes called *Parts of Speech*: But some comprise them all under three Classes, viz. *Noun, Verb* and *Adverb*. Under *Noun* they comprehend also *Pronoun* and *Participle*; and under *Adverb*, also *Preposition, Interjection* and *Conjunction*. Others to these add a fourth Class, viz. *Adnoun*, comprehending *Adjectives* under it, and restricting *Noun* to *Substantives* only. These by some are otherwise called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations* and *Particles*.

The Declinable Parts of Speech are so called, because there is some Change made upon them, especially in their last Syllables: And this is what we call *Declension* or *Declining* of Words. But the indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the same.

The last Syllable, on which these Changes do fall, is called the *Ending* or *Termination* of Words.

These Changes are made by what Grammarians call *Accidentia*, i. e. *The Accidents* of Words.

These *Accidents* are commonly reckoned Six, viz. *Gender, Case, Number, Mood, Tense, and Person*. Of these, *Gender* and *Case* are peculiar to three of the Declinable Parts of Speech, viz. *Noun, Pronoun* and *Participle*; and *Mood, Tense* and *Person* are peculiar to one of them, viz. *Verb*: And *Number* is common to them all.

**NOTE, 1.** That *Person* may also be said to belong to *Noun* or *Pronoun*; but then it is not properly an *Accident*, because no Change is made by it in the Word.

A 2

NOTE,

## 4 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE 2. That *Figure, Species* and *Comparison*, which some call *Accidents*, do not properly come under that Name; because the Words have a different Signification from what they had before. See Chap. IX.

NOTE 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun and Participle, are in a stricter Sense called *Declension* or *Declination* of them; and the Changes that happen to a Verb are called *Conjugation*.

### C A P. I.

#### De Nomine.

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Casus & Numeros.

M. Quot sunt Genera?

D. Tria; Masculinum, Femininum & Neutrum.

M. Quot sunt Casus?

D. Sex; Nominativus, Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus, Vocativus & Ablativus.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

D. Duo; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt Declinationes?

D. Quinque; Prima, Secunda, Tertia, Quarta & Quinta.

#### RÈGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent Nominativum, Accusativum & Vocativum similes in utroque Numero: & hi Casus in Plurali semper desinunt in a.

2. Vocativus in Singulari

### C H A P. I.

#### Of Noun.

M. **H**ow is a Noun declined?

S. By Genders, Cases, and Numbers.

M. How many Genders are there?

S. Three; Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

M. How many Cases are there?

S. Six; Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative and Ablative.

M. How many Numbers are there?

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Declensions are there?

S. Five; First, Second, Third, Fourth and Fifth.

#### GENERAL RULES.

1. Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative alike in both Numbers: And these Cases in the Plural end always in a.

2. The Vocative for the masculine

plural

plerumque, in Plurali semper, est similis Nominativo.

part in the Singular, [and] always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.

3. Dativus & Ablativus Pluralis sunt similes.

3. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.

4. Nomina propria plerumque carent Plurali.

4. Proper Names for the most part want the Plural.

A NOUN is that Part of Speech which signifies the Name or Quality of Thing ; as, *Homo*, a Man ; *Bonus*, good.

A Noun is either Substantive or Adjective.

A Substantive Noun is That which signifies the Name of a Thing ; as, *Arbor*, a Tree ; *Virtus*, Virtue ; *Bonitas*, Goodness.

An Adjective Noun is That which signifies an Accident, Quality, or Property of a Thing ; as, *Albus*, white ; *Felix*, happy ; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Substantive may be distinguished from an Adjective these two Ways.

1. A Substantive can stand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an Adjective cannot without a Substantive ; as, I can say, *A Stone falls*, but I cannot say, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective, it will make Sense ; but if it be joined with a Substantive, it will make Nonsense : Thus we say, *A good Thing*, *A white Thing* ; but we do not say, *A man Thing*, *A Beast Thing*.

A Substantive Noun is divided into Proper and Appellative.

A Proper Substantive is That which agrees to one particular Thing of a Kind ; as, *Virgilius*, a Man's Name ; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name ; *Scotia*, Scotland ; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh ; *Taus*, The Tay.

An Appellative Substantive is That which is common to a whole Kind of Things ; as, *Vir*, a Man ; *Femina*, a Woman ; *Regnum*, a Kingdom ; *Civitas*, a City ; *Fluvius*, a River.

Note, That when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes an Appellative ; as, *Duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

GENDER in a natural Sense is the Distinction of Sex, or the Difference between Male and Female : But in a Grammatical Sense we commonly understand by it The Fitness that a Substantive Noun hath to be joined to an Adjective of such a Termination, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of Animals, the *Hebæ* are of the Masculine, and the *Stæves* of the Feminine Gender : But of Things without Life, and where the Diversity of Sex is not considered, even of things that have Life, some are of the Masculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to the Use of the best Authors of the Latin Tongue.

Besides these three principal Genders, there are reckoned also other three Principal, which are nothing else but Compounds of the three former.

The Gender Common to two, the Gender Common to three, and the Gender Common to all.

The Common Gender, or Gender common to two, [*Genus commune*, or *commune duum*] is Masculine and Feminine ; and belongs to such Nouns as agree to both Sexes : As, *Parens*, a Father or Mother ; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

The Gender common to three, [*Genus commune trium*] is Masculine, Feminine and Neuter ; and belongs only to Adjectives. Whereof some have three Terminations, the first Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neuter ;



## 6 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

as; as, *Bonus, bona, bonum*, good. Some have two, the first Masculine and Feminine, and the second Neuter; as, *Mollis, molle*, soft. And some have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three Genders; as, *Prudens*, wise.

III. The Doubtful Gender [*Genus dubium*] belongs to such Nouns as are found in good Authors sometimes in one Gender, and sometimes in another; as, *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. *Vulgus* the Rabble, Masc. or Neut.

[We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the Epicene or Promiscuous Gender; for properly speaking there is no such Gender distinct from the three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed Epicene Nouns, that is, some Names of Animals in which the Distinction of Sex is either not at all, or very obscurely considered; and these are generally of the Gender of their Termination; as, *Aquila*, an Eagle, Femin. because it ends in *a*; *Passer*, a Sparrow, Mascul. because it ends in *er*. (See p. 8. and 11.) So *Homo*, a Man or Woman, Masc. *Mancipium*, a Slave, Neut. *Anguis*, a Serpent, Doubtful.]

To distinguish these Genders we make use of these three Words, *Hic, hac, hoc*, which are commonly, tho' improperly, called *Articles*. *Hic* is the Sign of the Masc. *hac* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neut. Gender; *hic & hac* of the Common to two; *hic, hac, hoc* of the Common to three; *hic aut hac & hic aut hoc*, &c. of the Doubtful.

By CASES we understand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining: So called from *cado*, to fall, because they naturally fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Casus rectus*, the straight Case; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The Singular NUMBER denotes one single Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; the Plural denotes more Things than one; as, *Homines*, Men.

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the Declension of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

### The Declension of English Nouns.

I. The English Language hath the two *Genders* of Nature, viz. Masculine and Feminine; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE*, according to the Difference of their Sex: And almost every Thing without Life is called *IT*. But because all the Adjectives of this Language are of one Termination, it has no Occasion for any other Genders.

II. The English, properly speaking, has no *Cases*, because there is no Alteration made in the Words themselves, as in the Latin; but instead thereof we use some little Words called *PARTICLES*.

Thus, The Nominative Case is the simple Noun itself: The Particle *OF* put before it, or *'s* after it, makes the Genitive: *TO* or *FOR* before it makes the Dative: The Accusative is the same with the Nominative: The Vocative hath *O* before it: And the Ablative hath *WITH, FROM, IN, BT, &c.*

NORR, 1. That when a Substantive comes before a Verb, it is called the Nominative; when it follows after a Verb Active, without a Preposition intervening, it is called the Accusative.

NORR, 2. That the Apostrophus or Sign (*'*) is not used in the Genitive Plural; as *Mens Works, the Apostles Creed*.

NORR, 3. That *TO* the Sign of the Dative, and *O* of the Vocative, are frequently omitted or understood.



# Part II. Chap. I. of Noun.

2

Besides these there are other two little Words called **ARTICLES**, which are commonly put before Substantive Nouns, viz. *A* [or *An* before a Vowel] called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite*.

*A* or *AN* signifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as, *A Man*, that is, *one Man*. *The* is a Pronoun, and signifies almost the same with *This* or *That*, and *These* or *Those*.

**NOTE, 1.** That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, and Appellatives, when used in a very general Sense, have none of these Articles; as, *Man is mortal*, i. e. every *Man*; *God abhors Sin*, i. e. All *Sins*: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, &c. frequently have *The*; as, *The Thames*, *The Britannia*, *The Alps*.

**NOTE, 2.** That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plural wants the Indefinite.

**NOTE, 3.** That when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the Article put before both, as, *A good Man*, *The good Man*: And the Definite is put before the Adjective when the Substantive is understood; as, *The just will live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Man*.

**III.** The English hath two Numbers as the Latin, and the Plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the Singular; as, *Book*, *Books*.

**Exc. 1.** Such as end in *ch*, *sh*, *s* and *x*, which have *es* added to their Singular; as, *Churches*, *Brushes*, *Witnesses*, *Boxes*. Where it is to be noticed, that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural than in the Singular Number. Which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce*, *ge*, *je*, *ze*; as, *aces*, *Ages*, *Houses*, *Mazes*. The Reason of this proceeds from the near approach these Terminations have in their Sound to an *s*, so that their Plural could not be distinguished from the Sing. without the Addition of another Syllable. And for the same Reason, Verbs of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their third Person Sing. of the present Tense.

**Exc. 2.** Words that end in *for* or *se*, have their Plural in *ves*; as, *Calfs*, *Calves*; *Leafs*, *Leaves*; *Wife*, *Wives*: But not always, for *Hoof*, *Roof*, *Grief*, *Mischief*, *Dwarf*, *Strife*, *Muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *Staves*.

**Exc. 3.** Some have their Plural in *en*; as, *Man*, *Men*; *Woman*, *Women*; *Child*, *Children*; *Chick*, *Chickens*; *Brother*, *Brothers* or *Brethren*; (which last is seldom used but in Sermons, or in a burlesque Sense.)

**Exc. 4.** Some are more irregular; as, *Die*, *Dice*; *Moose*, *Mice*; *Louse*, *Lice*; *Goose*, *Geese*; *Foot*, *Feet*; *Tooth*, *Teeth*; *Penny*, *Pence*; *Sow*, *Sows*, and *Swine*; *Cow*, *Cows*, and *Kine*.

**Exc. 5.** Some are the same in both Numbers; as, *Sheep*, *Hops*, *Swine*, *Chicken*, *Pease*, *Deer*; *Fish* and *Fishes*, *Mile* and *Miles*, *Horse* and *Horses*.

**NOTE,** That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather *ies* than *ys* in the Plural; as, *Cherry*, *Cherries*.

## An English Noun is thus declin'd,

**A, The**

**The**

<div> <div>Nom.</div> <div>Gen. of</div> <div>Dat. to [for]</div> <div>Acc.</div> <div>Voc. O</div> <div>Abl. with, from, in, by,</div> </div>	<div> <div>King,</div> <div>King,</div> <div>King,</div> <div>King,</div> <div>King,</div> <div>King,</div> </div>	<div> <div>Plural.</div> </div>	<div> <div>[for]</div> </div>	<div> <div>Nom.</div> <div>Gen. of</div> <div>Dat. to [for]</div> <div>Acc.</div> <div>Voc. O</div> <div>Abl. with, from, in, by,</div> </div>	<div> <div>King,</div> <div>Kings,</div> <div>Kings,</div> <div>Kings,</div> <div>Kings,</div> <div>Kings,</div> </div>

A 4

Prima

# 8 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

## Prima Declinatio.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum singularem in a diphthongon.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Quatuor; a, e, as, es; ut,

*Penna, Penelope, Aeneas, Anchises.*

*Penna, a Pen, Fem.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Terminations.*

<i>Nom. penna, a pen.</i>	<i>Nom. pennæ, pens.</i>	<i>a, a,</i>
<i>Gen. pennæ, of a pen.</i>	<i>Gen. pennarum, of pens.</i>	<i>a, arum</i>
<i>Dat. pennæ, to a pen.</i>	<i>Dat. pennis, to pens.</i>	<i>a, is,</i>
<i>Acc. pennam, a pen.</i>	<i>Acc. pennas, pens.</i>	<i>am, as,</i>
<i>Voc. penna, O pen.</i>	<i>Voc. pennæ, O pens.</i>	<i>a, a,</i>
<i>Abl. penna, with a pen.</i>	<i>Abl. pennis, with pens.</i>	<i>a: is.</i>

¶ After the same manner you may decline *Litera*, a Letter; *Via*, a Way; *Galea*, an Helmet; *Tunica*, a Coat; *Toga*, a Gown.

*A* is a Latin Termination, *e, as* and *es* are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Masculine.

RULE. *Filia*, a Daughter; *Nata*, a Daughter; *Dea*, a Goddess; *Animæ*, the Soul, with some others, have more frequently *abus* than *is*, in their Dat. and Abl. Plur. to distinguish them from Masculines in *us* of the second Declension.

¶ In declining Greek Nouns observe the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* (and *a*) have sometimes their Accusative (with the Poets) in *an*; *as, Aeneas, Aeneam vel Aenean*; (*Osia, Ossam vel Ossan*.)

2. These in *es* have their Accusative in *en*, and their Vocative and Ablative in *e*: *As,*

*Nom. Anchises,*

*Voc. Anchise;*

*Accus. Anchisen,*

*Ablat. Anchise.*

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive in *es*, their Accusative in *en*, their Dative, Vocative and Ablative in *e*: *As,*

*Nom. Penelope,*

*Dat. Penelope,*

*Voc. Penelope,*

*Abl. Penelope.*

*Gen. Penelopes,*

*Acc. Penelopen,*

[As to the Dative of Words in *e*, I have followed Probus and Priscian among the Antients; Lilly, Alvarus, Vossius, Messieurs de Port Royal, Johnson &c. among the Moderns. And tho' none of them cite any Example, yet I remember to have observed three such Datives, viz. *Cybele* in Virg. *Æn.* XI. 768. *Penelope* in Martial. *Epig.* XI. 8, 5. and *Epigone* in Reinesii *Syntag. Inferip.*

Class.

F

Class. 14. Nouns  
these Nouns  
they thought  
all their other  
since their Ab  
trary, they m  
from a Nom  
then they  
Plautus, I  
am or  
Words  
Measur  
that e  
a, (u  
Citan

M.

I

lare

M

tion

D.

um, o

Gen

a Lo

the l

Nom

Gen

Da

# Part II. Chap. I. of Nouns.

11

**P. Per Genitivum singu-**

**lem in is, & Dativum in i.**

**M. Quot habet Termina-**  
**ones seu Syllabas finales?**

**D. Septuaginta & unam.**

**M. Quot habet literas fi-**  
**nales?**

**D. Undecim; a, e, o, c, d,**

**n, r, s, t, x; ut,**

**Diadema, a Crown; Sedile, a Seat; Sermo, Speech; Lac,**  
**Milk; David, a Man's Name; Animal, a living Creature;**  
**Patrem, a Comb; Pater, a Father; Rupes, a Rock; Caput,**  
**the Head; Rex, a King.**

**Sermo, Speech, Masc.**

**Sing.**

**Plur.**

**Nom. sermo,**

**Nom. sermones,**

**Gen. sermonis,**

**Gen. sermonum,**

**Dat. sermoni,**

**Dat. sermonibus,**

**Acc. sermonem,**

**Acc. sermones,**

**Voc. sermo,**

**Voc. sermones,**

**Abl. sermone: Abl. sermonibus.**

**Terminations:**

**a, e, o, &c. es, a,**  
**is, um, ium,**  
**i, ibus,**  
**em, es, a,**  
**a, e, o, &c. es, a,**  
**e, i: ibus.**

**Sedile, a Seat, Neut.**

**Sing.**

**Plur.**

**Nom. sedile, Nom. sedilia,**

**Gen. sedilis, Gen. sedilium,**

**Dat. sedili, Dat. sedilibus,**

**Acc. sedile, Acc. sedilia,**

**Voc. sedile, Voc. sedilia,**

**Abl. sedili: Abl. sedilibus.**

**As Sermo, so most Substantives of**  
**this Declension in a, o, c, d, n, t, x,**  
**er, or, ur, as, os, us; (except their**  
**Acc. and Voc. when they are Neuters,**  
**or when they want the Plural Num-**  
**ber.) Also (when they have more Syl-**  
**lables in their Gen. than Nom.) all**  
**Words in es, and most of those in is.**

**Of the final Letters of the third Declension, Six are peculiar to it, o, c, d,**  
**t, x; the other five are common to other Declensions, viz. a, e, n, r, s.**  
**The copious final Letters are, o, n, r, s, x.**

**The copious final Syllables are, io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, us, ys, em.**  
**All Nouns in a of this Declension are originally Greek, and have always an**  
**before it. There are only two Words in c; Lac, Milk; and Halc, a**  
**herring. Words in d are proper Names of Men, and very rare. There are**  
**only three Words in t, viz. Caput, the Head; Sinciput, the Fore-head; Os-**  
**cut, the Hind head.**

**1. The Terminations er, or, os, o, n,**

**2. The Terminations io, do, go, as, es, is, ys, aus,**

**3. The Terminations a, c, e, l, men, ar, ur, us, ut,**

**But from these there are many Exceptions.**

**Masculine.**  
**Feminine.**  
**Neuter.**

**Note,**

## 12 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, 1. That for the most part the Genitive hath a Syllable more than the Nominative; and where it is otherwise, they generally end in *e*, *es*, or *is*.

NOTE, 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the Genitive, must run through the other Cases (except the Accusative and Vocative Singular of Neuters;) as, *Thema*, -atis, -ate, a Theme; *Sanguis*, -guinis, Blood; *Iter*, -itineris, a Journey; *Carmen*, -minis, a Verse; *Judex*, -dicis, a Judge.

### REGULÆ.

1. Nomina in *e*, & Neutra in *al* & *ar* habent *i* in Ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantum in Ablativo faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *i* tantum, vel *e* aut *i* simul, faciunt *ium*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo singulari habent *a* in Nominativo, Accusativo & Vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia*.

### RULES.

1. Nouns in *e*, and Neuters in *al* and *ar*, have *i* in the Ablative.

2. These which have *e* only in the Ablative make their Genitive plural in *um*.

3. These which have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make *ium*.

4. Neuters which have *e* in their Ablative sing. have *a* in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative plural.

5. But these which have *i* in the Ablative, make *ia*.

### 1. EXCEPTIONS in the Accusative Singular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accusative; as, *Vis*, *vim*, Strength; *Tussis*, the Cough; *Sitis*, Thirst; *avis*, the Beam of a Plough; *Ravis*, Hoarseness; *Amussis*, a Mason's Rule. To which add Names of Rivers in *is*; as, *Tybris*, *Thamesis*, which the Poets sometimes make in *im*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im*; as, *Navis*, a Ship; *Puppis*, the Stern; *Scutris*, an Ax; *Clavis*, a Key; *Febris*, a Fever; *Pelvis*, a Basin; *Reffis*, a Rope; *Turris*, a Tower; *Navem* vel *navim*, &c.

### 2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative Singular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accusative have *i* in the Ablative, as, *Vis*, *vim*, *vi*, &c. These that have *em* or *im*, have *e* or *is* as, *Navis*, *navem*, vel *navim*, *nave* vel *navi*.

2. *Canalis*, *Vectis*, *Bipennis*, have *i*: *Avis*, *Amnis*, *Ignis*, *Unguis*, *Rus*, and *Imber*, with some others, have *e* or *i*; but most commonly *e*.

3. These Neuters in *ar* have *e*; *Far*, *Jubar*, *NeFar* and *Hepar*: *Sal* also has *sale*.

### 3. EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive Plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as*, *is*, and *s*, with a Consonant before it, have *ium*; as, *As*, *assium*; *Lis*, *litium*; *Urs*, *urium*.

2. Also Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in their Genitive; as, *Vallis*, *vallium*; *Rupes*, *rupium*. Except *Panis*, *Canis*, *Vates* and *Volucris*.

3. To which add *Caro*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Mus*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Linter*, *Sal*, *Os*, *offit*.

NOTE, That when the Genitive Plural ends in *ium*, the Accusative frequently instead of *es* has *eis* or *is*; as, *omneis*, *parteis*, or *omnis*, *partis* for *omnes*, *partes*.

Of Greek Nouns.

Greek Nouns have sometimes their Genitive in *os*: And these are 1. Such as increase their Genitive with *d*; as, *Arkas, arcadis vel Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Briseis, -eidis vel -eidos*, a Woman's Name. 2. Such as increase in *os* pure, i. e. with a Vowel before it; as, *Hæresis, -eos, vel -ios*, an Heresy. 3. To these add *Sphyrngos, Strymonos* and *Panos*.

NOTE, That *is* is more frequent, except in the second Kind, and Patronymicks of the first.

II. 1. Greek Words which increase their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (i. e. with a Consonant before it) have frequently their Accusative sing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, *Lampas, lampadis, lampada*; also, *Minos, Minois*, *Minoa*; *Trois, Troas*; *Heros, herois, heroa, heroas*. 2. Words in *is* or *os*, whose Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accusative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *ryn*; as, *Hæresis, -eos, hæresim* or, *in, Chelys, -lyos, a Lute, chelym* or *ryn*. 3. Of Words in *is* which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, Masculines have their Accusative for the most part in *im* or *in*, seldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of; as, *Paris, Parim, vel Parin, vel Paridem*; Feminines have most commonly *dem* or *da*, and seldom *im* or *in*; as, *Briseis, Briseidem vel Briseida*.

III. Feminines in *o* have *ui* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Cases; as, *Dido, Didus, Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Didonis, Didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as, *Calchas, Achilles, Paris, Tiplys, Orpheus*; *Calcha, Achille, Pari, Tiphy, Orpheu*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and sometimes *on* in their Genitive plural; as, *Epigrammaton, Hæreson*) and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have most frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plur. as, *Poema, poematis*, because of old they said *poematum, ti*. *Bos* has *boun*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

M. Q Uomodo dignoscitur Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singularem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Duas; *us* & *ui*; ut,

*Fructus, Fruit*; *Cornu, an Horn*.

*Fructus, Fruit*, Masc.

Nom. fructus,  
Gen. fructus,  
Dat. fructui,  
Acc. fructum,  
Voc. fructus,  
Abl. fructu :

Plur.

Nom. fructus,  
Gen. fructuum,  
Dat. fructibus,  
Acc. fructus,  
Voc. fructus,  
Abl. fructibus,

Terminations.

*us, us,*  
*us, uum,*  
*ui, ibus,*  
*um, us,*  
*us, us,*  
*ui, ibus.*

*Cornu*



## Cornu, an Horn, Neut.

Sing.	{	Nom. cornu,	Plur.	{	Nom. cornua,	As Fructus, so Vul-
		Gen. cornu,			Gen. cornuum,	
		Dat. cornu,			Dat. cornibus,	
		Acc. cornu,			Acc. cornua,	
		Voc. cornu,			Voc. cornua,	
		Abl. cornu:			Abl. cornibus.	As Cornu, so Genu,
						the Knee; Venu, a Spit;
						Tonitru, Thunder.

Nouns in *us* of this Declension are generally Masculine, and these in *u* all Neuter, and indeclinable in the singular Number.

**Rules.** Some Nouns have *nouns* in their Dative and Ablative Plural, viz. *Arctus*, a Bow; *Artus*, a Joint; *Lacus*, a Lake; *Acus*, a Needle; *Portus*, a Port or Harbour; *Partus*, a Birth; *Tribus*, a Tribe; *Vernus*, a Spit.

**NOTE.** That of old Nouns of this Declension belonged to the Third, and were declined as *Crux*, *crucis*, a Cross; thus, *Fructus*, *fructus*, *fructui*, *fructuum*, *fructibus*; *Fructus*, *fructuum*, *fructibus*, *fructus*, *fructus*, *fructibus*. So that all the Cases are contracted except the Dative sing. and Genitive plur. There are some Examples of the Genitive in *us* yet extant; as *omnis*, the contrary there are several of the Dative in *u*.

The blessed Name *Jesus* is thus declined.

*Domus*, an House, Fem. is thus declined.

Sing.	{	Nom. Iesus,	Plur. wanting.	{	Nom. domus,	Plur.	Nom. domus,
		Gen. Iesu,			Gen. domus, v. mi.		Gen. domorum, v. uum.
		Dat. Iesu,			Dat. domui, v. mo.		Dat. domibus,
		Acc. Iesum,			Acc. domum,		Acc. domos, v. us.
		Voc. Iesu,			Voc. domus,		Voc. domus,
		Abl. Iesu.			Abl. domo:		Abl. domibus.

[**NOTE.** That the Genitive *domi* is only used when it signifies, At home; *domo*, the Dative, is found in Horace, *Epist. l. 1. 10. 13.*]

## Quinta Declinatio.

## The Fifth Declension

**M. Q**uomodo dignoscitur Quinta Declinatio?

**M. H**ow is the Fifth Declension known?

**D.** Per Genitivum singularem & Dativum in *ei*.

**S.** By the Genitive and Dative singular in *ei*.

**M.** Quot habet Terminationes?

**M.** How many Terminations hath it?

**D.** Unam, nempe *es*; ut,

**S.** One, namely *es*; as,

*Res*, a Thing, Fem.

Termination

Sing.	{	Nom. res,	Plur.	{	Nom. res.	{	<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
		Gen. rei,			Gen. rerum,		<i>ei</i> ,	<i>erum</i> ,
		Dat. rei,			Dat. rebus,		<i>ei</i> ,	<i>ebus</i> ,
		Acc. rem,			Acc. res,		<i>em</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
		Voc. res,			Voc. res,		<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
		Abl. re:			Abl. rebus.		<i>e</i> :	<i>ebus</i> .

No



Nouns of the Fifth Declension are not above fifty, and are all Feminine except *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Masc.

All Nouns of this Declension end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith; *Spes*, Hope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except these four; *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *Ovis*, a Ram; *Pavies*, a Wall, and *Quies*, Rest; which are of the Third.

Most Nouns of this Declension want the Genitive, Dative and Ablative plural; and many of them want the Plural altogether.

General Remarks on all the Declensions.

1. The Genitive plural of the first Four is sometimes contracted, especially by Poets; as, *Calicolum*, *Deum*, *Mensum*, *Currum*; for *Caliculorum*, *Deorum*, *Mensurum*, *Curvum*.

2. When the Genitive of the second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by Poets; as *Tuguri* for *Tugurii*. We read also *Aulæ* for *aule* in the First, and *Fide* for *fidei* in the Fifth; and so of other like Words.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva sunt vel primæ & secundæ Declinationis, vel tertiæ tantum.

Omnia Adjectiva habentia tres Terminationes (præter (a) undecim) sunt primæ & secundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminationes habent, sunt tertiæ.

Adjectiva primæ & secundæ habent Masculinum in *us*, (b) vel *er*; Fœmininum semper in *a*, Neutrum semper in *um*; ut

*Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good; *Tener*, *tendra*, *tenerum*, tender.

*Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom.	bon-us,	-æ,	-um,	Nom.	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Gen.	bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	Gen.	bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
Dat.	bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	Dat.	bon-is,	-is,	-is,
Acc.	bon-um,	-am,	-um,	Acc.	bon-os,	-as,	-a,
Voc.	bon-e,	-i,	-um,	Voc.	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Abl.	bon-o,	-a,	-o:	Abl.	bon-is,	-is,	-is.

(a) Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *celeber*, *saluber*, *volucer*, *campester*, *equester*, *medester*, *paluster*, *silvester*; which are of the Third, and have their Masc. in *er* or *is*, their Fem. in *is*, and Neut. in *e*.

(b) For *satur*, full, was of old *saturus*.

Tener

# 16 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue;

Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.

Sing.

Plur.

N. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	N. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
G. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-eri,	G. ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	A. ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	V. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-era,	-ero:	A. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three Substantives of the same Terminations and Declensions: As in the Examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *tener*, like *gener*; *bond* and *tenera*, like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Therefore the Ancients, as is clear from *Varro, lib. 3. de Anal.* declined every Gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first, especially if the Boy is of a slow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser*, -*era*, -*erum*, wretched; *liber*, -*era*, -*erum*, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *fer*. Others lose it; as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, fair; *niger*, -*gra*, -*grum*, black.

These following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *nullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether, with its Compounds; *utroque*, both; *uterlibet*, *utrovis*, which of the two you please; *alteruter*, the one or the other; have their Genitive singular in *ius* and Dative in *i*.

## Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis.

### 1. Unius Terminationis.

Felix, happy.

Sing.

Plur.

N. fel ix,	-ix,	-ix,	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel icem,	-icem,	-ix,	A. fel ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice, vel-ici, &c.			A. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,

### 2. Duarum Terminationum.

Mitis, mite, meek.

Sing.

Plur.

N. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	N. mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	G. mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	D. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitera,	mite,	A. mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	V. mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti:	A. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,

Mitio

# Part II. Chap. I. of Noun.

17

Mitior, mitius, Meeker.

Sing.

Plur.

miti-or,	-or,	-us,	N. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora;
miti-oris,	-oris,	-oris,	G. miti-orum,	-orum,	-orum.
miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	D. miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus;
miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	A. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
miti-or,	-or,	-us,	V. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
miti-ore vel -ori,	Ec.		A. miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

## 3. Trium Terminationum. 3. Of three Terminations.

Acer vel acris, acris, acre, Sharp.

Sing.

Plur.

a-cer vel -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	N. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	G. a-crium,	-crum,	-crum;
a-cri,	-cri,	-eri,	D. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus;
a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	A. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
a-cer vel -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	V. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
a-cri,	-cri,	-cri:	A. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

## REGULÆ.

## RULES.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis habent e vel i in Ablativo singulari.
2. At si neutrum sit in e, Ablativus habet i tantum.
3. Genitivus pluralis definit in ium; & Neutrum Nominativi, Accusativi & Vocativi in ia.
4. Excipe Comparativa, quæ um & a postulant.

1. Adjectives of the Third Declension have e or i in the Ablative singular.
2. But if the Neuter be in e, the Ablative has i only.
3. The Genitive plural ends in ium; and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative in ia.
4. Except Comparatives; which require um and a.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. Dives, Hospes, Sospes, Superstes, Juvens, Senex and Pauper have e in the Ablat. Sing. and consequently um in the Genit. Plur.
2. Compos, Impos, Consors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener and Liber; also Compounds ending in ceps, sex, pes and corpor; as, Princeps, Artifex, Bipes, Tricorpor, Have um, not ium.
3. Note. That all these have seldom the Neut. Sing. and never almost the Neut. Plur in the Nom. and Accus. To which add Memor, which has memori, and memorum, and Locuples, which has locupletium; also, Deses, Rehes, Habes, Perpes, Præpes, Teres, Concolor, Versicolor; which being hard to be met with in the Genit. Plur. 'tis a Doubt whether they should have ium; tho I incline most to the former.

3. *Par* has *pari*; *vetus*, *vetera*, & *veterum*; *Plus* (which hath only the Neut. in the Sing.) has *plure*, and *plures*, *plura* (or *pluria*) *plurimum*.

NOTE, 1. That Comparatives, and Adjectives in *us*, have more frequently *e* than *i*, and Participles in the Ablatives called *Absolute* have always *as*, *Carolo regnante*, *not regnanti*.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter, hardly have *e* but *i*; as *Vitrici ferro*, *not vitrice*.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives when they are put Substantively, have often *e*; as, *Affinis*, *Familiaris*, *Rivalis*, *Sodalis*, &c. So *Par*, a Match; *Cum pare quaque suo coeunt*. Ovid.

## OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. THE Ordinal and Multiplicative Numbers (see Chap. IX) are regularly declined. The Distributive wants the Singular, as also the Cardinal, except *Unus*, which is declined as in p. 16. and hath the Plural, when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing. as, *Una litera* one Letter; *Una murus*, one Wall; or when several Particulars are considered complexly as making one Compound; as, *Uni sex dies*, i. e. One Space of Six Days; *Una vestimenta*, i. e. One Suit of Apparel. *Plant.*

*Duo* and *Tres* are declined after this manner.

Plur.	Nom. duo,	duo,	Plur.	Nom. tres, tres,	tria,
	Gen. duorum,	duorum, duorum,		Gen. trium, trium,	trium,
	Dat. duobus,	duobus, duobus,		Dat. tribus, tribus,	tribus,
	Acc. duos vel o,	duas, duo,		Acc. tres, tres,	tria,
	Voc. duo,	duo,		Voc. tres, tres,	tria,
	Abl. duobus,	duobus, duobus.		Abl. tribus, tribus,	tribus,

*Ambo*, Both, is declined as *Duo*.

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille*, they are declined thus, *Ducenti*, *ducenta*, *centa*; *ducentorum*, *ducentarum*, *ducentorum*, &c.

4. As to *Mille*, *Varro*, and all the Grammarians after him, down to the present Age, make it (when it is put before a Genitive plural) a Substantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plur. declin'd, *Millia*, *millium*, *millibus*; when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make it an Adjective plural indeclinable. But *Scioppius*, and after him *Gronovius*, contend that *Mille* is always an Adjective plural; and under that Termination of all Cases and Genders; but that it hath two Neuters, *hec Mille*, and *illa Millia*. That the first is used, when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. And that, where it seems to be a Substantive, turning a Genit. *Multitudo*, *Numerus*, *Manus*, *Pecunia*, *Pondus*, *Spatium*, *Corpus*, or the like, are understood. I own that formerly I was of this sentiment; but now the weighty Reasons adduced by the most accurate *Perrin*, incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive and Adjective declin'd together; which will both make him more ready in the declensions, and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. Let the Examples at first be of the same Termination and Declensions; as, *Dominus justus*, a just Lord; *Penna bona*, a good Pen; *Genium eximium*, an excellent Wit; Afterwards let them be different in the termination or both; as, *Puer probus*, a good Boy; *Lectio facilis*, an easy Lesson; *Poeta optimus*, an excellent Poet; *Fructus dulcis*, sweet Fruit; *Dies faustus*, a happy Day, &c. And if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write them either in the School, or at home, to be revised by the Master next Day.

OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

These (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme.

1. Defective,	1. Substantives,	Wanting.	1. Number,	{ Sing. as, <i>Liberi, Mina, Arma.</i> Plur. as, <i>Aer, Humus, Euvum.</i>	
			2. Cases,	{ Nom. & Voc. { <i>Ditionis</i> Gen. { <i>Chaos.</i> Dat. { <i>Plus.</i> Voc. { <i>Ego.</i>	
			or having only		{ Gen. Dat. & Abl. Plur. as, <i>Mel.</i> Three; as, <i>Dica, dicam, dicas.</i> Two; as, <i>Suppetia, Suppetias,</i> One; as, <i>Dicis, Inficis, nocen.</i> Masc. as, <i>catera, caterum.</i> Fem. as, <i>Quisquis, quicquid.</i> Neut. as, <i>Compos.</i> Masc. & Fem. as, <i>Plus.</i> Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Sicelis.</i> Fem. & Neut. as, <i>Tros.</i> Plur. as, <i>Unusquisque.</i> Sing. as, <i>Centum.</i> Voc. as, <i>Nullus.</i> Dat. & Abl. as, <i>Tantumdem.</i> Voc. only, as, <i>Maſſe, Maſſi.</i>
2. Adjectives.	Wanting.	1. Gender,	or having the		
		2. Number,			
		3. Case,			
2. Variable,	1. Too much,	In Gender having Sing.	and Plur.		
					In Declension being of the
3. Redundant,	1. Too little, as <i>Indeclinables,</i>				
2. Redundant,	In Termination				
3. Redundant,	In Gender				
3. Redundant,	In Declension				

NOTE,



## 20 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, 1. That the *Defective Nouns* are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE, 2. That these which *vary too little*, may be ranked under the *Five*; and these which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*. E. G. *calorum* comes not from *Calum*, but from *Cælus*; and *Vasa*, *vasorum* not from *vas*, *vasis*, but from *vasum*, *vasi*: But Custom, which alone gives Laws to Languages, has dropt the Singular, and retained the Plural; and so of others.

### De Comparatione.

M. Quot sunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Positivus*, *Comparativus* & *Superlativus*.

M. Quotæ Declinationis sunt hi gradus?

D. *Positivus* est Adjectivum Primæ & Secundæ Declinationis, vel Tertiæ tantum; *Comparativus* est semper Tertiæ; *Superlativus* semper Primæ & Secundæ.

M. Unde formatur *Comparativus* gradus?

D. A proximo casu *Positivi* in *i*, addendo pro masculino & fœminino syllabam *or*, & *us* pro neutro; ut,

*Doctus*, learned, Gen. *docti*, *doctior* & *doctius*, more learned; *Mitis*, meek, Dat. *miti*, *mitior* & *mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur *Superlativus*?

D. 1. Si *Positivus* desinat in *er*, *Superlativus* formatur addendo *rimus*; ut,

*Pulcher*, fair, *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *Pauper*, poor, *perrimus*, most poor.

2. Si *Positivus* non desinat in *er*, *Superlativus* formatur à proximo casu in *i*, addendo *ssimus*; ut,

### Of Comparison

M. How many Degrees Comparison are there?

S. Three; the *Positive*, *Comparative* and *Superlative*.

M. Of what Declension are these Degrees?

S. The *Positive* is an *Adjective* of the *First* and *Second* Declension, or *Third* only; the *Comparative* is always of the *Third*; the *Superlative* always of the *First* and *Second*.

M. Whence is the *Comparative* Degree formed?

S. From the next Case of the *Positive* in *i*, by adding for the *Masculine* and *Feminine* the Syllable *or*, and *us* for the *Neuter*; as,

M. Whence is the *Superlative* formed?

S. 1. If the *Positive* ends in *er*, the *Superlative* is formed by adding *issimus*; as,

2. If the *Positive* ends in *i*, the *Superlative* is formed from the next Case in *i*, by adding *issimus*; as,



Gen. *Docti, doctissimus* most learned; Dat. *Miti, mitissimus*, most meek.

Grammatical COMPARISON we understand three Adjective Nouns, which the two last are formed from the first, and import Comparison with that is, Heightning or Lessening of its Signification.

Consequently these Adjectives only which are capable of having their Signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the Quality of a Thing simply and absolutely; *Durus*, hard; *Parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that Quality; as, *Durior*, *Minor*, less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high, or very low degree; as, *Durissimus*, hardest, or most hard; *Minimus*, very little, or least.

The Positive hath various Terminations; the Comparative ends always in *us*; the Superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *num*.

The positive properly speaking is no Degree of Comparison, for it does not compare Things together: However it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon, and formed from it.

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *er* added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The SIGN of the Superlative is the Syllable *est* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *most* put before it.

Therefore, That when the Positive is a long Word, or would otherwise sound harsh by having *er* or *est* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative the Word *more*, and the Superlative by *most* or *very*, put before it.

And for the like Reason, the Latin Comparative is sometimes made by *Magis* and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime*, put before the Positive. And these are particularly used, when the Positive ends in *us* with a Vowel before as, *Pius*, godly; *Arduus*, high; *Idoneus*, fit; tho' not always.

### IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. Bonus,	melior,	optimus:	Good,	better,	best.
Malus,	pejor,	pestimus:	Evil,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maximus:	Great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus:	Little,	less,	least.

*Multus*, plurimus; *multa*, plurima; *multum*, plus, plurimum: much, more,

*Facilis*, easy; *Humilis*, low; *Similis*, like; make their Superlative by changing *i* into *issimus*; thus, *facillimus*, *humillimus*, *simillimus*.

*Exter*, outward; *Citer*, hither; *Superus*, above; *Inferus*, below; *Posterus*, hind, have regular Comparatives; but their Superlatives are, *extremus* (or *imus*), uttermost; *citissimus*, hithermost; *supremus* (or *summus*), uppermost, *infimus* (or *imus*), lowest; *postremus* (or *postimus*), latest, or last.

Compounds in *Dicens*, *Loquens*, *Ficiens* and *Volens*, have *entior* and *entissimus*; as, *Maledicens*, one that raileth; *Magniloquens*, one that boasteth; *Beneficus*, Beneficent; *Malevolens*, Malevolent. But these seem rather to come from Participles or Nouns in *ens*. Besides, the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio*, are very rare; and hence has *Mirificissimus*, and *Plautus* has *Mendaciloquius*.

*Prior*, former, has *Primus*, first; *Uterior*, farther, *Ultimus*, farthest or last; *Proximus*, nearest or next; *Ocior*, swifter, *Ocissimus*, swiftest; their

# 22 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Positives being out of use, or quite wanting. *Proximus* has also another Comparative formed from it, viz. *Proximior*.

6. There are also a great many other Adjectives capable of having the Signification increased, which yet want one or more of these Degrees of Comparison; as *Albus*, white, without Compar. and Superl. *Ingeni*, great, *gentior*, greater, with out the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacerrimus*, most holy, without the Comp. *Anterior*, former, without Posit. and Superl.

¶ These three Degrees of Comparison being nothing else but the distinct Adjectives, may be declined either severally each itself, or jointly altogether; Respect still being had to the Declensions. But the first Way is much easier, and will answer all the Purposes of Comparison as well as the other.

## C A P. II.

### De Pronomine.

M. **Q**uot sunt Pronomina + simplicia?

D. Octodecim; *Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester; Nostras, Vestras & Cujas.*

¶ Ex his tria sunt Substantiva, *Ego, Tu, Sui*; reliqua quindecim sunt Adjectiva.

Sing. { *Nom. ego, I,*  
*Gen. mei, of me,*  
*Dat. mihi, to me,*  
*Acc. me, me,*  
*Voc. ———*  
*Abl. me, with me:*

Sing. { *N. tu, thou,*  
*G. tui, of thee.*  
*D. tibi, to thee,*  
*A. te, thee,*  
*V. tu, O thou,*  
*A. te, with thee;*

*Ego, I.*

Plur. { *Nom. nos, we,*  
*Gen. nostrum vel nostri, of*  
*Dat. nobis, to us,*  
*Acc. nos, us,*  
*Voc. ———*  
*Abl. nobis, with us.*

*Tu, Thou.*

Plur. { *N. vos, ye [you]*  
*G. vestrum vel vestri, of*  
*D. vobis, to you,*  
*A. vos, you,*  
*V. vos, O ye [you]*  
*A. vobis, with you.*

# Part II. Chap. II. of Pronoun. 23

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

N. ———	N. ———
G. sui, of himself, &c.	G. sui, of themselves;
D. sibi, to himself,	D. sibi, to themselves;
A. se, himself,	A. se, themselves,
V. ———	V. ———
A. se, with himself:	A. se, with themselves.

A PRONOUN is an irregular kind of Noun: Or, it is a Part of Speech which has Respect to, and supplies the Place of a Noun; as, instead of your name, I say, *Tu, Thou, or You*; instead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, *Ille fecit*, He did it, viz. James.

NOTE, 1. That the Dat. *Mibi* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi*. NOTE, 2. That of old the Gen. Plur. of *Ego* was *Nostorum* and *Nestrarum*; *Tu, Vestrorum* and *Vestrarum* (of which there are several Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*.

NOTE, 3. That we use *Nostrum* and *Vestrum* after Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives, and *Nostri* and *Vestri* after other Nouns, and Verbs; tho' there want not some Examples of these last with *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, even in *Cicero* himself, as *Vossius* shews.

*Ille, illa, illud*; *He, she, that, or it.*

N. ille, illa, illud,	N. illi, illæ, illa,
G. illius, illius, illius,	G. illorum, illarum, illorum,
D. illi, illi, illi,	D. illis, illis, illis,
A. illum, illam, illud,	A. illos, illas, illa,
V. ille, illa, illud,	V. illi, illæ, illa,
A. illo, illa, illo:	A. illis, illis, illis.

*Ipse, ipsa, ipsum*; *He himself, she herself, itself, & itse*; *illa, istud*; *be, she, that*, are declined as *ille*, save only that *se* hath *ipsum* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. Neuter.

*Hic, hæc, hoc*; *This.*

N. hic, hæc, hoc,	N. hi, hæ, hæc,
G. hujus, hujus, hujus,	G. horum, harum, horum,
D. huic, huic, huic,	D. his, his, his,
A. hunc, hanc, hoc,	A. hos, has, hæc.
V. hic, hæc, hoc,	V. hi, hæ, hæc,
A. hoc, hæc, hoc:	A. his, his, his.

*Is, ea, id*; *He, she, it, or that.*

N. is, ea, id,	N. ii, eæ, ea,
G. ejus, ejus, ejus,	G. eorum, earum, eorum,
D. ei, ei, ei,	D. iis, vel eis,
A. eum, eam, id,	A. eos, eas, ea,
V. ———	V. ———
A. eo, ea, eo:	A. iis, vel eis.

*Quis,*

Quis, quæ, quod vel quid; Who, which, what?

Sing.

Plur.

N. quis, quæ, quod vel quid, N. qui, quæ, quæ,

G. cujus, cujus, cujus, G. quorum, quarum, quorum

D. cui, cui, cui, D. quæis vel quibus,

A. quem, quam, quod vel quid, A. quos, quas, quæ,

V. \_\_\_\_\_ V. \_\_\_\_\_

A. quo, qua, quo: A. quæis vel quibus.

Qui, quæ, quod; Who, which, that.

Sing.

Plur.

N. qui, quæ, quod, N. qui, quæ, quæ,

G. cujus, cujus, cujus, G. quorum, quarum, quorum

D. cui, cui, cui, D. quæis vel quibus,

A. quem, quam, quod, A. quos, quas, quæ,

V. \_\_\_\_\_ V. \_\_\_\_\_

A. quo, qua, quo: A. quæis vel quibus.

*Meus*, my, or mine; *Tuus*, thy, or thine; *Suus*, his or her own, its own, their own, are declined like *Bonus*, *-um*: And *Noster*, our, or ours; *Vester*, your, or yours, like *Pulcher*, *-ebra*, *-chrum*, of the First and Second Declension. But *Tuus*, *Suus* and *Vester* want the Vocative; *Noster* and *Meus* have it, in which this last hath *mi*, (and sometimes *meus*) in the Masc. Sing.

*Nostras*, of our Country; *Vestras*, of your Country; *Quæ*, of what or which Country, are declined like *Felix*, the Third Declension; Gen. *nostratis*, Dat. *nostrati*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon, address himself unto, want the Vocative. In consequence of which R many Nouns; as, *Nullus*, *Nemo*, *Qualis*, *Quantus*, *Quæ*, &c. and several Pronouns; as, *Ego*, *Sui*, *Quis*, &c. want the Vocative; but not so many either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which Reason we have given Vocatives to *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Hic* and *Idem*, therein following Judgment of the great *Vossius*, *Messieurs de Port-Royal* and *Johnson*, who they support by the following Authorities:

*Esse nunc, Sol, testis, Et hæc mihi terra precanti.* Virg. *Æn.*

*Tu mihi libertas illa paterna veni.* Tibul lib. 2. *El.* 4.

*Onox illa, quæ pene æternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti.* Cic. pro Fl.

*Ipse meas æther accipe summe preces.* Ovid. in Ibin.

And the Vocative of *Idem* seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid. Met.

*Quique fuisti*

*Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Verbius esto.*

Tho' all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, viz. *Meus*, *Noster* and *Nostras*, to have the Vocative.

NOTE, 2. That *Qui* is sometimes used for *Quis*; as, Cic. *Qui tantus labor?* Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris?*

No

NOTE, 3. That *Quod* with its Compounds, *Aliquod*, *Quodvis*, *Quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a Substantive in the same Case; *Quid*, with its Compounds, *Aliquid*, *Quidvis*, *quiddam*, &c. either have no Substantive express'd, or govern one in the Genitive: Whence it is that these last are commonly reckoned Substantives. But that *quid* as well as *quod* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly shews; otherwise we shall make *Minutum*, *Plus*, *Tantum*, *Quantum*, &c. also Substantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet most Grammarians agree to be Adjectives having the common Word *Negotium* understood.

NOTE, 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as Mr. Johnson expresses by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos*, III. 3.

NOTE, 5. That *Nostras*, *Vestras* and *Cujas* are declined like *Gentile* or *Natural* Nouns in as of the third Decl. in Imitation of which they are formed; *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a Man, Woman, or Thing, of or belonging to the Towns of *Arpinum*, *Fidena* or *Privernum*; and may have the Neuter, as well as these: (For as *Cic.* has *Iter Arpinas*, and *Liv.* *bellum Privernas*; *Colum.* has *Arbusculum nostras*, and *Cic.* *Nostratia verba*) contrary to what *Præter* teaches.

I pass over taking notice, that in old Authors, especially *Plautus*, we find *quis* and *quisquis* sometimes of the Feminine Gender; *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *hisce* for *hij*; *hibus*, *ibus*, for *his*; *iis*; *illæ*, *ipse*, *istæ*, *quæ* in the Nominative or Dative Singular Feminine; *em* for *eum*; *istes* for *istos*; *quovis*, *quos*, for *cujus*, &c. because they are extraordinary.

### OF COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with some other Word or Syllable. In these *Quis* is sometimes the first, and sometimes the last Part of the Word compounded; but *Qui* is always the first.

The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put first, are *Quisnam*, who? *Quisquam*, any one; *Quisque*, every one; *Quisquis*, whosoever: Which thus declined,

Nom. Gen. Dat.

*Quisquam*, *quæquam*, *quodquam vel quidquam*; *cujusquam*, *cuiquam*.  
*Quispiam*, *quæpiam*, *quodpiam vel quidpiam*; *cujuspiam*, *cuipiam*.  
*Quisquam*, *quæquam*, *quodquam vel quidquam*; *cujusquam*, *cuiquam*.  
*Quisque*, *quæque*, *quodque vel quidque*; *cujusque*, *cuique*.  
*Quisquis*, *quidquid vel quicquid*; *cujuscujus*, *cuique*.

So forth in their other Cases, according to the simple *Quis*. But *Quis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nominative and Accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Acc. *quæquam*, without the *que*. The Plural is scarcely used.

The Compounds of *Qui*, when it is put last, are *Aliquis*, some; *Ecquis*, who? To which some add *Nequis*, *Signis* and *Namquis*; but these are more frequently read separately, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined,

Nom. Gen. Dat.

*Aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid vel aliquid*, *alicujus*, *alicui*.  
*Ecquis*, *ecqua*, *vel ecquæ*, *ecquod vel ecquid*, *eccujus*, *eccui*.  
*Si quis*, *si qua*, *si quod vel si quid*, *si cuius*, *si cui*.  
*Ne quis*, *ne qua*, *ne quod vel ne quid*, *ne cuius*, *ne cui*.  
*Num quis*, *num qua*, *num quod vel num quid*, *num cuius*, *num cui*.

NOTE, That these, and only these, have *que* in the Nominative Singular Feminine and in the Accusative Plural Neuter.



## 26 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

3. The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicumque*, whosoever; *Quidam*, some; *Quilibet*, *Quivis*, any one; whom you please; and are thus declined,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
<i>Quicumque</i> , <i>quicumque</i> , <i>quodcumque</i> ;	<i>cujuscunque</i> , <i>cuiuscunque</i>	
<i>Quidam</i> , <i>quidam</i> , <i>quoddam vel quiddam</i> ;	<i>cujusdam</i> , <i>cuidam</i> .	
<i>Quilibet</i> , <i>quolibet</i> , <i>quodlibet vel quidlibet</i> ;	<i>cujuslibet</i> , <i>cuilibet</i> .	
<i>Quivis</i> , <i>quovis</i> , <i>quodvis vel quidvis</i> ;	<i>cujusvis</i> , <i>cuivis</i> .	

Some of these are twice compounded; as, *Ecquisnam*, Who? *Unusquisque*, Every one. The first is scarce declin'd beyond its Nomin. and the second wants the Plur.

NOTE, 1. That all these Compounds want the Vocative, except *Quisquis*, *Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Unusquisque*, and perhaps some others. *Vid. Voss. p. 33*

NOTE, 2. That all these Compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quis*, in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

NOTE, 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam vel quiddam* in the Accus. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam* in the Genit. Plur. *n* being put instead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the same Reason in these Cases of *Idem*.

II. Some reckon among Compound Pronouns, *Ego*, *Tu* and *Sui*, with *Ipsi*. But in the best Books they are generally read separately; which seems necessary, because of *te ipse* and *se ipse*, where the two Words are of different Case.

III. *Id* is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *Idem* the same; which is thus declined,

Sing.			Plur.		
Nom. <i>Idem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Nom. <i>iidem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>eadem</i> ,		Gen. <i>eiusdem</i> , <i>eiusdem</i> , <i>eiusdem</i> ,	Gen. <i>eorundem</i> , <i>earundem</i> , <i>eorundem</i> ,	
Gen. <i>eiusdem</i> , <i>eiusdem</i> , <i>eiusdem</i> ,	Gen. <i>eorundem</i> , <i>earundem</i> , <i>eorundem</i> ,		Dat. <i>eisdem</i> , <i>eidem</i> , <i>eidem</i> ,	Dat. <i>eisdem vel iisdem</i> ,	
Dat. <i>eidem</i> , <i>eidem</i> , <i>eidem</i> ,	Dat. <i>eisdem vel iisdem</i> ,		Acc. <i>eundem</i> , <i>eandem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Acc. <i>eisdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>eadem</i> ,	
Acc. <i>eundem</i> , <i>eandem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Acc. <i>eisdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>eadem</i> ,		Voc. <i>idem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Voc. <i>iidem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>eadem</i> ,	
Voc. <i>idem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	Voc. <i>iidem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>eadem</i> ,		Abl. <i>eodem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>eodem</i> ;	Abl. <i>eisdem vel iisdem</i> ,	
Abl. <i>eodem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>eodem</i> ;	Abl. <i>eisdem vel iisdem</i> ,				

IV. Most of the other Compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Cases and Genders; as,

1. Of *iste* and *hic* is compounded *Isthic*, *isthac*, *isthoc vel isthuc*. Acc. *Isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc vel isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut. *Isthac*.

2. Of *Ecce* and *Ille* is compounded *Eccum*, *eccam*; Plur. *eccos*, *eccas*: As from *Ecce* and *Ille*, *Ellum*, *ellam*; *ellos*, *ellas*, in the Accusatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *hic*, *iste*, and *quis*, are compounded these Genitive *Ejusmodi*, *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *cujusmodi*; and sometimes with the Syllable *ce*, put in the middle, *ejuscemodi*, *hujuscemodi*, &c.

4. Of *cum* and these Ablatives, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui* or *qua*, as *quibus*, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quicum* or *quocum*, and *quibuscum*.

5. To these add some Pronouns compounded with these Syllabical Adpositions, *met*, *te*, *ce*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed and emphatical; as, *agomet*, *tute*, *hujusce*, *meapte*, *biccine*.

### REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or *Foregoing State* (as the *English Grammar* call it) we use, *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *She*, *We*, *Ye*, *They*, and *Who*: But in the other Cases (which they name the *Following State*) we use, *Me*, *Thee*, *Him*, *Her*, *Us*, *You*, *Them* and *Whom*.

2. Wh

2. When we speak of a Person, we use *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ask a Question or not; as, *Who did it?* *The Man who did it.* But if we speak of a Thing with a Question, we use *What*; as, *What Book is that?* Without a Question we use *Which*; as, *The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently understood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often used, even without a Question, instead of *The Thing which*, or *That which*; as, *I know what you design*, i. e. *The Thing which*, or *that which* you design. As, on the contrary, when it refers to some particular thing mentioned before, we make use of *which*, even with a Question; as *Give me the Book. Which Book?* *which of the Books?*

3. *This* makes in the Plur. *These*, and *That* makes *Those*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently used instead of *Who*, *Whom* or *Which*; as, *The Man that told you*, *The Man that we saw*, *The Book that I lent you.*

4. We use, *My*, *Thy*, *Her*, *Ours*, *Yours*, *Their*, when they are joined with Substantives, or the Word *Own*; and *Mine*, *Thine*, *Hers*, *Ours*, *Yours*, *Theirs*, when the Substantive is left out or understood; as, *My Book*, *This Book is mine*, &c.

NOTE, That with *Own*, or a Substantive beginning with a Vowel, we sometimes use *Mine* and *Thine*; as, *my Eye*, or *Mine Eye*; *Thy own*, or *Thine own*.

5. We often use *Here*, *There*, *Where*, compounded with these Particles, *Of*, *By*, *Upon*, *About*, *In*, *With*, instead of *This*, *That*, *Which* and *What*, with these same Particles; as, *Hereof*, *Hereby*, *Hereupon*, *Hereabouts*, *Herewith*, *Herewith*; for, *Of this*, *By this*, *Upon this*, *About this place*, *In this*, *With this*, &c.

6. *Whose* and *Its* are Genitives, instead of, *Of whom*, *of it*; and it is a Fault to use *Its* for *'Tis* or *It is*, as some do.

### C A P. III.

#### De Verbo.

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Verbum?

D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros & Personas.

M. Quot sunt Voces?

D. Duæ; *Activa* & *Passiva*.

M. Quot sunt Modi?

D. Quatuor; *Indicativus*, *Subjunctivus*, *Imperativus* & *Infinitivus*.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

### C H A P. III.

#### Of Verb,

M. **H**ow is a Verb declined?

S. By Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons.

M. How many Voices are there?

S. Two; the *Active* and *Passive*.

M. How many Moods are there?

S. Four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative* and *Infinitive*.

M. How many Numbers are there?

D. Duo;

## 28 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

D. Duo; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt tempora?

D. Quinque; *Præsens, Præteritum imperfectum, Præteritum perfectum, Præteritum plusquamperfectum & Futurum.*

M. Quot sunt Personæ?

D. Tres; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia.*

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Tenses are there?

S. Five; the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-plus-perfect and the Future.

M. How many Persons are there?

S. Three; First, Second, Third.

A VERB is a Part of Speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer. Or a Verb is that part of Speech which expresses what is affirmed or said of things.

A Verb may be distinguished from any other Part of Speech these ways. 1. A Verb being the most necessary and essential Part of a Sentence without which it cannot subsist, whatever Word with a Substantive Name makes full Sense, or a Sentence, is a Verb; and that which does not make full Sense with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with HE or I SHALL before it makes Sense, is a Verb; otherwise not.

I. In most Verbs there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE ending in o, and the PASSIVE in or. The former expresses what is done by the Nominative or Person before it: The latter what is suffered by, or done to the Nominative or Person before it; as *Amo*, I love; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The Moods are divided into Finite and Infinite. The first three, viz. the Indicative, Subjunctive and Imperative, are called FINITE, because they have certain fixed Terminations answering to certain Persons both singular and plural. The last is called INFINITIVE or INFINITE, because it is not confined to one Number or Person more than another.

1. The INDICATIVE Mood affirms or denies positively; as, *Amo*, I love; *Non amo*, I do not love: Or else asks a Question; as, *An amo*, Dost thou love? *Annon amas*? Dost thou not love?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood generally depends upon another Verb in the same Sentence, either going before or coming after; as, *Si me amas*, *præcepta mea servate*, If ye love me, keep my Commandments.

[This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods, viz. The Optative, the Subjunctive more strictly taken, and the Potential. 1. It is called OPTATIVE, when a Word importing a Wish; as, *Utinam*, Would to God it, Ois, goes before it. 2. It is named SUBJUNCTIVE, when it is subjoined to some other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives become Indefinites. (See Chap. IX.) 3. It is called POTENTIAL, when with a simple Affirmation of the Verb is also signified some Modification or Affection, such as a Power, Possibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, &c. The Signs which in our Language are, May, Can, Might, Could, Would, Should and He (for Would have or Should have; as, *They had repented*, for would have repented) But because the Terminations of these Moods are the same, we have comprehended them all under one, viz. the Subjunctive, to which with small Difference

they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater Number, and so we shall have a Promissive, Hortative, Precative, Concessive, Mandative, Interrogative Mood; nay a Volitive and Debitive, which is commonly included in the Potential. As for the Optative, 'tis plain that the Wish is not in the Verb itself (which signifies only the Matter of it, or what is wished) but in the Verb Opto, which is understood, with ut, uti, or utinam, which really signify no more than That. And 'tis very probable that in like manner some Verb, or other Word, may also be understood to what is called the Potential Mood, such as *potest, Res ita est, Fieri potest ut, &c.* as Vossius, Sanctius, Perizonius, and others do contend; tho' Mr. Johnson is of another Opinion.]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts or intreats; as, *Amare, Love thou.*

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Englished by TO; as, *Amare; To love.*

III. The TENSES are either Simple or Compound. The SIMPLE Tenses are the Present, the Preter-perfect and Future.

1. The PRESENT

2. The PRETER-PERFECT

3. The FUTURE

} Tense speaks of Time now

} Present.

} Past.

} To come.

The COMPOUND Tenses are the Preter-imperfect, and the Preter-pluperfect.

4. The PRETER-IMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was present and unfinished then; as, *Amabam, I did love* [i. e. then.]

5. The PRETER-PLUPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the thing was past at or before that Time; as, *Scriptissem epistolam, I had written a Letter, [i. e. before that Time.]*

There is also a Compound Future Tense, called the FUTURE-PERFECT EXACT, which refers to some Time yet to come, and imports that a thing as yet future shall be past and finished at or before that Time; as, *Cum cenavero tu leges, When I shall have supped [i. e. after Supper] you shall read.* This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is *Shall have*; as the other Future, called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two Things yet future shall be contemporary or exist at one Time; as, *Cum cenabo tu leges, When I shall sup, [i. e. in Time of Supper] you shall read.*

[And not only the Tenses, but even the MOODS themselves may be divided into SIMPLE and COMPOUND. I call the Indicative a Simple Mood, because it simply affirms something of its Person or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call Compound, because they have some other Idea's or Modifications of our Thoughts superadded to the simple Signification of the Verb; such as, a Command, a Desire, Prohibition, Possibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wish, Concession, Supposition, Condition, Purpose, &c. These Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as a Command, &c. in the Imperative, and according to Johnson, Power, Will, Duty, &c. in the Mood called Potential; or closely interwoven with it by the help of a Conjunction, Averb or other Verb, as *potest* or understood: And because these also generally connote Time,

they

they very frequently make all the Tenses of these Moods to become Compound Tenses. For, with respect to their Execution, they are generally future; but with respect to their Modal Signification, they may fall under any of the other Distinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for Instance, *Leges, Reads thou*, with respect to its Execution, is future; but with respect to its Command, it is present. Again in *Legam, I may or can read*, the Action (if done at all) must be future, but the Liberty or Possibility are present; and so of others. Now, as it seems evident that from these Modifications of the Verb more than from the bare Execution of it, the Tenses of these Moods have at first been distinguished; so I am of Opinion, that had Grammarians taken their Measures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as Sanctius, &c. determining the Times of these Moods by the Execution only, have made the whole Imperative and Subjunctive of the future time, and the Infinitive and Participles of all Times, or rather of of no Time: Others, viz. Vossius, Linacæ, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c. tho' they will not go so far as Sanctius, yet upon the same Grounds make *Utinam legam* the Future of the Optative; *Utinam legerem* the Present of it. By the same Rule, they make a Future of the Potential in *RIM*; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should or shall sooner believe: And another of the Subjunctive in *ISSEM*; as, *Juravit se illum statim interfectorum, nisi iusjurandum sibi dedisset*; He swore he would presently kill him, if he should not swear to him. Cic. But, with all imaginable Deference to these great Men, I humbly think that these Tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as Compound, i. e. respecting one Time as to their Execution, and another as to the various Modifications, superadded to, or involved in their Signification. To instance in the two last Examples, (because they seem to have the greatest Difficulty) *Citius crediderim* seems to import these two Things, 1<sup>st</sup>, That I have and continue to have, a Reason why I should not believe it; which Reason is of the Imperfect or past Time. And 2<sup>dly</sup>, That I shall sooner have believed it, than another Thing, with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many Examples where the Preterite in *RIM* hath the same Signification with the Future Perfect in *RO*; as, *Si te inde exemerim, Terent. for eximero*. See Voss. lib. v. cap. 15. and Aul. Gell lib. xviii. cap. 2. As to the other Example, the Composition of two Times is yet more evident; for tho' *iusjurandum dedisset* be posterior and consequently future with respect to *Juravit*, yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to *interfecturum*, to prevent which it behoved it necessarily to be past; and so of others. The same Rule in my Opinion will likewise hold in the Infinitive and Participles, which of themselves have always one fixed Time; and when they seem to be of another Time, that is not in them, but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for instance, *Scribere* is always present, or co-existent with the Verb before it; and *Scripsisse* is always prior to the same Verb, in all its Tenses; as, *Dixit, dixit, or dicet; juvat, juvit, or juvabit Me scribere and Me scripsisse*. So also the Participles have a fixt Time, present, past or future; and when any part of the Verb Sum is joined with them, they retain their own Times, and have these of that Verb superadded to them. But because there are innumerable Occasions of Speaking, wherein the nice Distinctions of Times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiscuously used: As I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the Passive, but Active Voice, both in the Latin and other Languages, if there were place for it. Which yet in my Judgment does not hinder but that every part of a Verb hath formally and of its own Nature a certain Time simple or Compound, to which it is fixed and determined.



V. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, answering to the same Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.  
 VI. There are three PERSONS in each Number: The FIRST speaks of himself, the SECOND is spoken to, and the THIRD is spoken of. The FIRST hath only EGO and NOS, the SECOND only TU and VOS, and the THIRD any Substantive NOUN Singular and Plural put before the respective Terminations of the Verb, answering to them through all Voices, Moods and Tenses.

A Verb hath the same Respect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to its Substantive; and therefore, as an Adjective hath not properly either Gender or Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for these of its Substantive; so a Verb properly neither Persons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations answering to the Persons and Numbers of its Nominative.]

NOTE, 1. That Ego and Tu are seldom express'd, because the Terminations of the Verb immediately discover them, without any hazard of a Mistake.

NOTE, 2. That if a Substantive Noun be joind with Ego, or Tu; the Verb is of the Person of these Pronouns, not of the Noun.

NOTE, 3. That in the Continuation of a Discourse, the third Person is also frequently understood, because easily known by what went before; and these Pronouns, *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, idem, quis* and *qui*, do often supply the place of it.

### THE ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Present	<p>A&amp;T. The Theme of the Verb, and <i>est, eth, or s;</i> or for the greater Emphasis, <i>do, dost, doth, or does</i>, before it.</p> <p>Pass. <i>am, art, is, are, be, beest</i>, with a Word in <i>ed, en, t, &amp;c.</i></p>
Imperf.	<p>A&amp;T. <i>ed, edst, &amp;c.</i> or for the greater Emphasis, <i>did, didst</i>, before it.</p> <p>Pass. <i>was, wast, were, wert</i>, with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i></p>
Perfect	<p>A&amp;T. <i>have, hast, hath</i>, or <i>as</i>, with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i> or as the Imp.</p> <p>Pass. <i>have been, hast been, hath or has been</i>, with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i></p>
Super.	<p>A&amp;T. <i>had, hadst</i>, with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i></p> <p>Pass. <i>had been, hadst been</i>, with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i></p>
Future	<p>A&amp;T. <i>shall, will, shalt, wilt</i>, with the Verb.</p> <p>Pass. <i>shall be, will be, shalt be, wilt be</i>, with a Word in <i>ed, en, &amp;c.</i></p>
	<p>The Subjunctive Mood Active has frequently these Signs,</p> <p>Present, <i>may</i> or <i>can</i>.</p> <p>Imperf. <i>might, could, would, should</i>.</p> <p>Perfect. <i>may have, or might have, could have, would have, should have</i>.</p> <p>Super. <i>might have, could have, would have, should have</i> or <i>had</i>.</p> <p>Future, <i>shall have</i>.</p>

The Passive has frequently the same Signs with *be, or been*.

### De Conjugationibus.

Q. Uot sunt Conjugationes?  
 D. Quatuor; Prima, Secunda, Tertia & Quarta.  
 M. Quæ sunt Notæ harum Conjugationum?

### Of Conjugations.

M. H ow many Conjugations are there?  
 S. Four; First, Second, Third and Fourth.  
 M. What are the Marks of these Conjugations?

D. Prima

	D.		S.
Prima	} habet	} A longum E longum E breve I longum	} First } Along Second } E long Third } E short Fourth } I long
Secunda			
Tertia			
Quarta			

The common Characteristick or MARK by which these Conjugations distinguished from one another, is one of these three Vowels, A, E, I, before the RE of the Infinitive Active, tho' they may also be known by the last Vowels in several other Parts of them; for A long is most frequent in the First, E long in the Second, E or I short in the Third, and I long in the Fourth: Only E before *bam*, *bas*, *bat*, &c. and before *mus* and *tis*; *mur* and *mini*, is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But it is to be observed that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts formed from them (because of the great Irregularity of their middle Syllables and constant Agreement in their last Vowel, and in the Terminations arising from it, in all Conjugations) cannot properly be said to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui*, *cui*, *Elicui*, *Amicui*, or in *Fricum*, *Doctum*, *Elicitum*, *amicum*, or in the Parts that come from them, whereby to distinguish their Conjugations.

# Prima Conjugatio.

# The First Conjugation

A M O.

To Love.

Vox Activa.

The Active Voice.

Præcipuæ Partes.

The Principal Parts.

Præs. Indic.

Perfect.

Sup.

Præs. Infinit.

Am-o,

am-avi,

am-atum,

am-are.

INDICATIVUS Modus.

The INDICATIVE Mode.

Præsens.

The Present.

Sing.	1	Am-o,
	2	Am-as,
	3	Am-at:
Plur.	1	Am-amus,
	2	Am-atis,
	3	Am-ant.

1	I Love, or do love,
2	Thou lovest, or dost love,
3	He loveth, or doth love:
1	We love, or do love,
2	Ye (or you) love, or do love,
3	They love, or do love.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

Sing.	1	Am-abam,
	2	Am-abas,
	3	Am-abat:
Plur.	1	Am-abamus,
	2	Am-abatis,
	3	Am-abant.

1	I loved, or did love.
2	Thou lovedst, or didst love,
3	He loved, or did love:
1	We loved, or did love,
2	Ye loved, or did love,
3	They loved, or did love.

*Perfektum.*

*The Perfekt.*

- |                          |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Am-avi,                | 1 I have loved,    |
| 2 Am-avisti,             | 2 Thou hast loved, |
| 3 Am-avit:               | 3 He hath loved:   |
| 1 Am-avimus,             | 4 We have loved,   |
| 2 Am-avistis,            | 2 Ye have loved,   |
| 3 Am-averunt, vel-avere. | 3 They have loved. |

*Plusquimperfektum.*

*The Plu-perfekt.*

- |                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| 1 Am-averam,   | 1 I had loved,      |
| 2 Am-averas,   | 2 Thou hadst loved, |
| 3 Am-averat:   | 3 He had loved:     |
| 1 Am-averamus, | 1 We had loved,     |
| 2 Am-averatis, | 2 Ye had loved,     |
| 3 Am-averant:  | 3 They had loved.   |

*Futurum.*

*The Future.*

- |              |                            |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Am-abo,    | 1 I shall or will love,    |
| 2 Am-abis,   | 2 Thou shalt or wilt love, |
| 3 Am-abit:   | 3 He shall or will love:   |
| 1 Am-abimus, | 1 We shall or will love,   |
| 2 Am-abitis, | 2 Ye shall or will love,   |
| 3 Am-abunt.  | 3 They shall or will love. |

*CONJUNCTIVUS. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.*

*Præsent.*

*The Present.*

- |            |                             |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 Am-em,   | 1 I may or can love,        |
| 2 Am-es,   | 2 Thou mayst or canst love, |
| 3 Am-et:   | 3 He may or can love:       |
| 1 Am-emus, | 1 We may or can love,       |
| 2 Am-etis, | 2 Ye may or can love,       |
| 3 Am-ent.  | 3 They may or can love.     |

*Imperfektum.*

*The Imperfekt.*

- |              |  |         |
|--------------|--|---------|
| 1 Am-arem,   | 1 I might, could, would or should      | } love. |
| 2 Am-ares,   | 2 Thou mightest, couldst, wouldst, &c. |         |
| 3 Am-aret:   | 3 He might, could, would or should     |         |
| 1 Am-aremus, | 1 We might, could, would or should     |         |
| 2 Am-aretis, | 2 Ye might, could, would or should     |         |
| 3 Am-arent.  | 3 They might, could, would or should   |         |

*Petr.*

*I loved, or did love, I den loved, or didst love, &c. as in the Imperfekt.*

# 34 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

## Perfektum.

## The Perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-averim,	1	I may have loved,
	2	Am-averis,	2	Thou may'st have loved,
	3	Am-averit:	3	He may have loved:
Plur.	1	Am-averimus,	1	We may have loved,
	2	Am-averitis,	2	Ye may have loved,
	3	Am-averint.	3	They may have loved.

## Plusquamperfectum.

## The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-avisset,	1	I might, could, would, &c. have or
	2	Am-avisses,	2	Thou mightest, couldst, &c. have or
	3	Am-avisset:	3	He might, could, &c. have or
Plur.	1	Am-avissetus,	1	We might, could, &c. have or
	2	Am-avissetis,	2	Ye might, could, &c. have or
	3	Am-avissent.	3	They might, could, &c. have or

## Futurum.

## The Future.

Sing.	1	Am-avero,	1	I shall have loved,
	2	Am-averis,	2	Thou shalt have loved,
	3	Am-averit:	3	He shall have loved:
Plur.	1	Am-averimus,	1	We shall have loved,
	2	Am-averitis,	2	Ye shall have loved,
	3	Am-averint.	3	They shall have loved.

## IMPERATIVUS Modus. The IMPERATIVE Mood.

### Præsens.

### The Present.

Sing.	2	Am-a vel am-ato,	2	Love thou or do thou love.
	3	Am-ato:	3	Let him love:
Plur.	2	Am-ate vel am-atote,	2	Love ye or do ye love.
	3	Am-anto.	3	Let them love.

## INFINITIVUS Modus.

## The INFINITIVE Mood.

Præs. Am-are.	Præs. To love.
Perf. Am-avisse.	Perf. To have or had loved.
Fut. Am-aturum	Fut. To be about to love.

## PARTICIPIA.

## The PARTICIPLES.

Præs. Am-ans.	Of the Present, Loving.
Fut. Am-aturus, -a, -um.	Of the Future, About to love.

## GERUNDIA.

## The GERUNDS.

Nom. Am-andum.	Nom. Loving.
Gen. Am-andi.	Gen. Of loving.

Dat.

Dat. Am-ando.

Acc. Am-andum.

Abl. Am-ando.

Dat. To loving.

Acc. Loving.

Abl. From, in or by loving.

S U P I N A.

The SUPINES.

Am-atum.

First, To love.

Am-atu.

Last, To love, or to be loved.

VOX PASSIVA.

The Passive Voice.

Amor,

amatus,

amari.

INDICATIVUS Modus. The INDICATIVE Mood.

Præsens.

The Present.

1 Am-or,

1 I am loved,

2 Am-aris vel am-are,

2 Thou art loved,

3 Am-atur:

3 He is loved:

1 Am-amur,

1 We are loved,

2 Am-amini,

2 Ye are loved,

3 Am-antur.

3 They are loved.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

1 Am-abar,

1 I was

2 Am-abaris vel -abare,

2 Thou wast [wert]

3 Am-abatur:

3 He was

1 Am-abamur,

1 We were

2 Am-abamini,

2 Ye were

3 Am-abantur.

3 They were

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

1 sum vel fui,

1 have been

2 es vel fuisti,

2 Thou hast been

3 est vel fuit:

3 He hath been

1 sumus vel fuimus,

1 We have been

2 estis vel fuistis,

2 Ye have been

3 sunt, fuerunt v. fuerz

3 They have been

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plu-perfect.

1 eram vel fueram,

1 I had been

2 eras vel fueras,

2 Thou hadst been

3 erat vel fuerat:

3 He had been

1 eramus v. fueramus,

1 We had been

2 eratis vel fueratis,

2 Ye had been

3 erant vel fuerant.

3 They had been

Futurum.

The Future.

1 Am-abor,

1 I shall or will be

2 Am-aberis vel -abere,

2 Thou shalt or wilt be

3 Am-abitur:

3 He shall or will be

C 2

Plur.



# 36 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Plur. { 1 Am-abimur,  
2 Am-abimini,  
3 Am-abuntur.

1 We shall or will be  
2 Te shall or will be  
3 They shall or will be

loved

## SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus.

## The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood

### Præsens.

### The Present.

Sing. { 1 Am-er,  
2 Am-eris vel -ere,  
3 Am-etur:  
Plur. { 1 Am-emur,  
2 Am-emiini,  
3 Am-entur.

1 I may or can be  
2 Thou mayst or canst be  
3 He may or can be  
1 We may or can be  
2 Te may or can be  
3 They may or can be

loved

### Imperfectum.

### The Imperfect.

Sing. { 1 Am-arer,  
2 Am-ateris vel -arere,  
3 Am-aretur:  
Plur. { 1 Am-aremur,  
2 Am-aremini,  
3 Am-arentur.

1 I might, could, would, &c.  
2 Thou mightest, couldst, &c.  
3 He might, could, &c.  
1 We might, could, &c.  
2 Te might, could, &c.  
3 They might, could, &c.

### Perfectum.

### The Perfect.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 sim vel fuerim,  
2 sis vel fueris,  
3 sit vel fuerit:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 simus vel fuerimus,  
2 sitis vel fueritis,  
3 sint vel fuerint.

1 I may have been  
2 Thou mayst have been  
3 He may have been  
1 We may have been  
2 Te may have been  
3 They may have been

loved.

### Plusquamperfectum.

### The Plu-perfect.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 essem vel fuisset,  
2 esses vel fuisset,  
3 esset vel fuisset:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 essemus vel fuissetis,  
2 essetis vel fuissetis,  
3 essent vel fuissent.

1 I might, could, &c. have or  
2 Thou mightest, &c. have or  
3 He might, &c. have or  
1 We might, &c. have or  
2 Te might, &c. have or  
3 They might, &c. have or

### Futurum.

### The Future.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 fuerō,  
2 fueris,  
3 fuerit:  
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 fuerimus,  
2 fueritis,  
3 fuerint.

1 I shall have been  
2 Thou shalt have been  
3 He shall have been  
1 We shall have been  
2 Te shall have been  
3 They shall have been

loved.

## IMPERATIVUS Modus.

## The IMPERATIVE Mood

### Præsens.

### The Present.

Sing. { 1 Am-are vel am-ator,  
2 Am-ator:

2 Be thou loved,  
3 Let him be loved

Plu

- 2 Am amini,  
3 Am-antor.

- 2 Be ye loved.  
3 Let them be loved.

INFINITIVUS Modus. The INFINITIVE Mood.

- Inf. Am-ari. To be loved.  
Inf. Am-atum esse vel fuisse. To have or had been loved.  
Inf. Am-atum iri. To be about to be loved.

PARTICIPIA.

The PARTICIPLES.

- Perfecti temporis, Am-atus, -a, -um. Of the Perfect, Loved.  
Futuri, Am-andus, -a, -um. Of the Fut. To be loved.

## Secunda Conjugatio.

### VOX ACTIVA.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

### INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

1	2	3	1	2	3
Doc-eo, -et, -et;	-emus, -etis, -ent.				
Doc-ebam, -ebas, -ebat;	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.				
Doc-ui, -uisti, -uit;	-uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uerunt, -uerunt.				
Doc-ueram, -ueras, -uerat;	-ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.				
Doc-ebo, -ebis, -ebit;	-ebimus, -ebitis, -ebunt.				

### SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Doc-eam, -eas, -eat;	-eamus, -eatis, -eant.
Doc-erem, -eres, -eret;	-eremus, -eritis, -erent.
Doc-uerim, -ueris, -uerit;	-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Doc-uisssem, -uissset, -uisset;	-uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Doc-vero, -ueris, -uerit;	-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

### IMPERATIVUS.

Doc-e, -eto, -eto;	-ete, -etote, -ento.
--------------------	----------------------

INFINITIVUS.	SUPINA.	PARTICIPIA.	GERUNDIA.
Inf. Doc-ere.	1. Doc-tum.	Pr. Doc-ens.	Doc-endum.
Inf. Doc-uisse.	2. Doc-tu.	Fu. Doc-turus.	Doc-endi.
Doc-turum			Doc-endo.

esse vel fuisse.

38 *Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,*

VOX PASSIVA.

Doceor, doctus, doceri.

INDICATIVUS.

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Pr.* Doc-eor, { -eris, -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.  
*Im.* Doc-ebar, { -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur  
*Fut.* Doc-ebor, { -eberis, -ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Pr.* Doc-ear, { -earis, -eatur; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.  
*Im.* Doc-erer, { -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur

IMPERATIVUS.

*Præs.* Doc- { -ere, -etor; -emini -entor.

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

*Præs.* Doc-eri. *Per.* Doc-tus, -a, -um  
*Perf.* Doc-tum esse vel fuisse. *Fut.* Doc-endus, -a, -um  
*Fut.* Doc-tum iri.

Tertia Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

INDICATIVUS.

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Præs.* <sup>1</sup> Leg-o, <sup>2</sup> -is, <sup>3</sup> -it; <sup>1</sup> -imus, <sup>2</sup> -itis, <sup>3</sup> -unt.  
*Imp.* <sup>1</sup> Leg-ebam, <sup>2</sup> -ebas, <sup>3</sup> -ebat; <sup>1</sup> -ebamus, <sup>2</sup> -ebatis, <sup>3</sup> -ebant.  
*Perf.* Leg-i, <sup>1</sup> -isti, <sup>2</sup> -it; <sup>1</sup> -imus, <sup>2</sup> -istis, <sup>3</sup> -erunt, -erunt.  
*Plus.* Leg-eram, <sup>1</sup> -eras, <sup>2</sup> -erat; <sup>1</sup> -eramus, <sup>2</sup> -eratis, <sup>3</sup> -erant.  
*Fut.* Leg-am, <sup>1</sup> -es, <sup>2</sup> -et; <sup>1</sup> -emus, <sup>2</sup> -etis, <sup>3</sup> -ent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* Leg-am, -as, -at; -amus, -atis, -ant.  
*Imp.* Leg-erem, -eres, -eret; -eremus, -eretis, -erent.

*Perf.*

Perf. Leg-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.  
 Plus. Leg-isse, -isses, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.  
 Fut. Leg-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pras. Leg- { -e, -ito; { -ite, -unto.  
 { -ito, { -itote,

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

Pras. Leg-ere.	1. Lec-tum.	Pr. Leg-ens.	Leg-endum.
Perf. Leg-isse.	2. Lec-tu.	Fut. Lec-turus.	Leg-endi.
Fut. Lec-turum.			Leg-endo.

esse vel fuisse.

VOX PASSIVA.

Legor, lectus, legi.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.	Plur.
Pras. Leg-or,	{ -eris, -itur; -imur, -imini, -untur.	
Imp. Leg-ebat,	{ -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.	
Fut. Leg-ar,	{ -eris, -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.	

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pras. Leg-ar,	{ -aris, -atur; -amur, -amini, -antur.
Imp. Leg-eret,	{ -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pras. Leg- { -ere, -itor; -imini, -untor.  
 { -itor,

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

Pras. Leg-i.	Perf. Lec-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Lec-tum esse vel fuisse.	Fut. Leg-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Lec-tum iri.	

# 40 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue, Quarta Conjugatio.

## VOX ACTIVA.

Audio, audiui, auditum, audire.

## INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pr. Aud-	io, is,	it;	imus, itis,	iunt,		
Im. Aud-	iebam, icbas,	iebat;	iebamus, icbatis,	iebant		
Pe. Aud-	ivi, ivisti, ivit;	ivimus, ivistis,				
Pl. Aud-	iveram, iveras, iverat;	iveramus, iveratis,	iverat			
Fu. Aud-	iam, ies, iet;	iemus, ietis,	ient.			

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Aud-	iam, ias, iat;	iamus, iatis, iant.
Im. Aud-	irem, ires, iret;	iremus, iretis, irent.
Pe. Aud-	iverim, iveris, iverit;	iverimus, iveritis, iverint.
Pl. Aud-	ivissem, ivisses, ivisset;	ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.
Fu. Aud-	ivero, iveris, iverit;	iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

## IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. Aud.	{ i, ito;	{ ite, itote,	iunto.
----------	-----------	---------------	--------

## INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

Pr. Aud. ire.	1. Aud. itum.	Pr. Aud. iens.	Aud. iendum.
Pe. Aud. ivisse.	2. Aud. itu.	Fu. Aud. iturus.	Aud. iendi.
Fu. Aud. iturum			Aud. iendo.
eise vel fuisse.			

## VOX PASSIVA.

ior, auditus, audiri.

## INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.		Plur.
Pr. Aud. ior,	[ ius, itur;	imur, imini,	iuntur.
Im. Aud. iebar,	[ iebaris, iebatur;	iebamur, iebamini	iebantur.
Fu. Aud. iar,	[ ieris, ietur;	iemur, iemini,	ientur.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Aud. iar,	[ iaris, iatur;	iamur, iamini,	iantur.
Im. Aud. irer,	[ ireris, iretur;	iremur, iremini,	irentur.



IMPERATIVUS.

Pras. Aud. { ire, -itor; imini, -iuntor,  
-itor,

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

Pras. Aud. -iri. Per. Aud. -itus, -a, -um,  
Perf. Aud. -itum esse vel fuisse. Fut. Aud. -iendus, -a, -um.  
Fut. Aud. -itum iri.

Note, That in the Examples of the Second, Third and Fourth Conjugations, we have omitted such Parts of the Passive Voice as are supplied by the Participle-perfect with the Verb Sum, viz. the Perfect and Plu-perfect of the Indicative, and the Perfect, Plu-perfect and Future of the Subjunctive, as being the same in all Conjugations with the Example of the First, the Change of the Participle only excepted: But 'tis carefully to be observed, that the Participle being an Adjective, must agree in Gender, Number and Case with its Substantive, or (which is the same thing) with the Person before it.

REMARKS shewing when a LATIN Verb is to be rendered otherwise in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Example.

When the Continuation of a thing is signified, the English Verb may be varied in all its Tenses by the Participle in ING, with the Verb

Pras. I am reading,	{ for }	I read
Imp. I was reading,		I did
Perf. I have been reading,		I have read.
Plu. I had been reading,		I had read.
Fut. I shall be reading,		I shall read.

So likewise in the Passive Voice, The House is building, Domus ædificatur. The Lesson was prescribing, Lectio præscribebatur. Sometimes a is set before the Participle; as, While the House is a building, It is a doing, He is a doing.

1. When a Question is asked, the Nominative Case or Person is set after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, Love I? Do I love? Can I love? Should he be loved?

3. We have made THOU the second Person Singular, to distinguish it from the Plural. But it is customary with us, (as also with the French and others) tho' we speak but to one particular Person, to use the Plural YOU; and never THOU, but when we address our selves to Almighty God, or otherwise when we signify Familiarity, Disdain or Contempt.

4. The

## 42 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

4. The *PERFECT* of the *Indicative* is often Englished as the *Imperfect*; as *Nunquam amavi tunc hominem*, I never loved [or did love] this Man. See Train of Examples in *Ovid. Metamorph. lib. 1. from v. 21 to 39.*

5. The *PERFECT* Tense is frequently Englished by *HAD* after *Antequam*, *Postquam*, *Ubi* or *Ut* for *Postquam*; as, *Postquam superavimus Isthmum*. After we had [were] pass'd over the Isthmus, *Ovid. Hac ubi dicta dedisti*. When he had spoken these Words, *Liv. Ut me salutavit, statim Romanus profectus est*. After he had saluted me, &c. *Cic.*

6. We have chosen *MAY*, *CAN*, *MIGHT*, *COULD*, &c. for the English of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* Mood, because these are the most frequent Signs of it, and distinguish it best from other Moods; but very often it is the same with the *Indicative*, save only that it hath some *Conjunction* or *Indefinite* Word before it; such as, *Is*, *Seeing*, *Left*, *That*, *Although*, *I wish*, &c. as, *Si amem*, If I love; *Ne amem*, Left I love; *Causa est cur amem*, It is the Cause why I love, *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut amem*. I intreat that you may love, *Idem.*

7. The *PRESENT* of the *Subjunctive*, after *Quasi*, *Tanquam*, and the like is sometimes Englished as the *Imperfect*; as, *Quasi intelligant qualis sit*, As if they understood what kind of Person he is, *Cic.*

8. When a Question is asked, the *Present* of the *Subjunctive* is frequently Englished by *SHALL* or *SHOULD*; as, *Eloquar an fiteam?* Shall I speak or be silent? *Virg. Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? *Ovid.* Likewise after *Non est quod*; as, *Non est (supple causa) quod eas*, There is no Reason why you should go, or you need not go. Sometimes it is Englished by *WOULD*; as, *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think they had sworn to [commit] Wickedness, *Ovid.*

9. We have Englished the *PERFECT* of the *Subjunctive* in *RIM* by *MAY HAVE*, (as, *Ne frustra hi tales viri venerint*, That such Men these may not have come in vain, *Cic. Forsitan audieris*, You may perhaps have heard it :) to distinguish it from the *Present* and *Pluperfect*, by the Sign of which it is also most frequently Englished; as, *Ut scidixerim*, That I may so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where should I have heard it? *Unus hominem tantas strages ediderit?* Could one Man make so great a Slaughter? *Virg. Fortasse erravim*, Perhaps I might be in an Error, *Plin. Oratores quos vidimus peritissimi*, The ablest Orators I have seen, [or could see.] *Quintil.*

10. This *PERFECT* in *RIM* sometimes inclines very much to a future Signification, and then it is Englished by *SHOULD*, *WOULD*, *COULD*, *CAN*, *WILL*, *SHALL*; as, *Cicilius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, *Juv. Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear, *Cic. Ciceronem cuicumque eorum facerem opposuerim*, I could easily match Cicero with any of them, *Quintil. Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, *Cic. Nec tamen excluderim alios*, And yet will not exclude others, *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te fugerit ego perierim*. If you but trip in the least, I shall be undone, *Ter.* But all those ways of speaking, tho' indeed they respect the Future as to the Execution, yet they seem also to look a little beyond it, to a Time when their Futurity shall pass; and so come near in Signification to the Future in *RO*.

11. The *PERFECT* of the *Subjunctive* after *Quasi*, *Tanquam*, and the like, may sometimes be Englished by *HAD*; as, *Quasi assuerim*, As if I had been present, *Plaut. Perinde ac si jam vicerint*, As if they had already overcome, *Cic.*

12. The *PLUPERFECT* in *ISSEM* is sometimes Englished by *SHOULD*; as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcumque imperavisset, se esse facturum*. He might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded [should command]

and] they would do, *Cæs. Fœdus ictum est his legibus, ut cuius populi cives certamine vicissent, is alteri imperaret*, An Agreement was made on these terms, that that People whose Countrymen should be victorious in that Combat, should have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a Thing is signified as future at a certain past time referred to; and commonly takes place, when what was formerly said directly, is afterwards recited directly; as, *No dubita, dabitur quodcumque optaris*, Doubt not, whatsoever you shall choose shall be given thee, *Ovid. Sol Phaethonti factum se esse cit, quicquid optasset*, The Sun told Phaethon that he would do whatsoever he should choose, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, That what was the Future the Subjunctive in the direct Speech, becomes the Plu-perfect in the indirect Recital of it. See *Turner's Exercises*, p. 21, &c. But as we have said p. 1. the Plu-perfect, notwithstanding its coming in the Place of a Future, still retains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a thing now at the Time of the Recital by *Cicero*, tho' it was future when first spoken by the Sun. And therefore there is no Reason for making this Termination a Future Tense, as Mr. Turner does.

3. Tho' the proper English of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE, yet generally the HAVE or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted; *Qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum consecrerit*, He who shall cut off Antony, shall put an End to the War, *Cic. Haud desinam donec persequar hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter. Si negaverit*, If he denies it, *Cic.* sometimes it is Englished by WILL; as, *Dixerit fortasse aliquis*, Some body will perhaps say, *Cic. Aut consolando, aut consilio, aut re juvero*, I will assist you either by comforting you, or with Counsel, or with Money, *Idem.* But we thus render the Future in RO in our Language, and tho' (which is more material) very frequently it and the Future of the Indicative are used promiscuously, yet I cannot be persuaded that in any Instance the formal Significations of these are the same, as Mr. Johnson contends, p. 339. But still I think with the great *Vossius*, that the Future in RO is always a Future Perfect, that is, that there is a Time insinuated when a thing yet future shall be finished or past; and that even when a Future of the Indicative is joined with it, which in order of time should be done before it; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris, si contabis*, You shall have done [shall do] me a great Favour, if you shall discourse, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the Finishing of an Action yet future, without formally considering the Finishing of another Action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous Usage of Tenses one for another be sufficient to make them formally the same, then shall confound all Tenses, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr. Johnson makes use of against *Sanctius*, with respect to the Tenses of the Infinitive.

4. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May, Can, Might, Would, Could*, (which are sometimes Verbs themselves, and not the Signs of them;) also after *Must, Bid, Dare, Let, Help and Make*.

5. But what is most to be regarded in the Infinitive is, that when it hath an Accusative before it, it is commonly Englished as the Indicative Mood, the Particle THAT being sometimes put before it, but oftner understood. And it is carefully to be remarked, that the same Tenses of the Infinitive are differently Englished, according as the preceding Verb varies its Tenses; as they appear in the following Scheme.

( <i>Dicit me scribere,</i>	He says [that] I write.
( <i>Dixit me scribere,</i>	He said [that] I was writing.
( <i>Dicet me scribere,</i>	He shall say [that] I am writing.

## 44 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

<i>Dixit me scripſiſſe,</i>	He ſays [that] I wrote, or did write.
<i>Dixit me ſcripſiſſe,</i>	He ſaid [that] I had written.
<i>Dicet me ſcripſiſſe,</i>	He ſhall ſay[that] I have written, or did write.
<i>Dicit me ſcripturum [eſſe,]</i>	He ſays [that] I will write.
<i>Dixit me ſcripturum [eſſe,]</i>	He ſaid [that] I would write.
<i>Dicet me ſcripturum [eſſe,]</i>	He ſhall ſay [that] I will write.
<i>Dicit me ſcripturum fuiſſe,</i>	He ſays [that] I would have written.
<i>Dixit me ſcripturum fuiſſe,</i>	He ſaid [that] I would have written.
<i>Dicet me ſcripturum fuiſſe,</i>	He ſhall ſay [that] I would have written.

It will be of great Uſe to accuſtom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this manner, both in *Engliſh* and *Latin*, eſpecially after he has been taught ſomething of Conſtruction: And then to cauſe him vary the Accuſative Me into *Te, ſe, illum, hominem, ſeminam*, &c. and theſe again into the Plural, *Nos, vos, ſe, illos, homines, ſeminas*, &c. But he muſt be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number and Caſe.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceeding Verb is of the *Preſent* or *Futur* Tenſe, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* with *eſſe*, is rendered by *SHALL* or *WILL*; and when it is of the *Perſect* Tenſe, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* is rendered by *WOULD*, as in the Examples above; and ſometimes by *SHOULD*; as, *Dixi te ſciturum eſſe*, I ſaid that you ſhould know.

NOTE, 2. That when the preceeding Verb is of the *Imperſect* or *Plu-perſect* Tenſes, the *Engliſh* of the *Infinitive* is the ſame as when it is of the *Perſect*.

16. The *Perſect* of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive Paſſive*, made up with *Sum* or *Sin*, are Engliſhed by *AM, ART, IS, ARE*, inſtead of *HAVE BEEN*, when the Thing is ſignified to be juſt now paſt; as, *Vulneratus ſum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum eſt*, The Work is finiſhed; *Cum tempora mutata ſint*, Since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Engliſhed by *WAS, WAST, WERE, WERT*; as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken: As is alſo what is called the *Plu-perſect*; with *eram* and *eſſem*; as, *Labor finitus erat*, The Labour was finiſhed; *Si labor finitus eſſet*, If the Labour were finiſhed.

## II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations.

1. A Great Part of the *Paſſive Voice*, and ſome of the *Active*, is made up of two of its own Participles and the Auxiliary Verb *Sum* (of which you have the full Conjugation p. 52.) after this manner:

The Participle Perfect with	<i>Sum</i> or <i>fui</i>	makes the	Perf.	Indicat.	Passive.
	<i>eram</i> or <i>fueram</i>		Plup.		
	<i>ſim</i> or <i>fuerim</i>		Perf.	Subjunct.	
	<i>eſſem</i> or <i>fuifſem</i>		Plup.		
	<i>fuero</i>		Fut.		
The Participle Fut. Active with	<i>eſſe</i> or <i>fuiſſe</i>		Perf.	Infinit.	Active.
	<i>eſſe</i> or <i>fuiſſe</i>		Fut.	Infinit.	

2. Having p. 30. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every Part of a Verb, with all its Participles, have a certain fixt Time ſimple or compound, which they formally and of their own Nature ſignify; it will perhaps be here expected that I ſhould account for that great Variety that is found in the

the *Passive Voice*. To put this Matter in the clearest Light I am able, I must premise another Division of the *Tenses*, viz. into *PASSING* and *PAST*; or into such as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the Ending or Finishing of it; and such as import that the thing is finished (or to be finished) and done. Of the first sort are the *Present*, *Imperfect* and *Future Imperfect*; of the second sort are the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect* and *Future Perfect*. See Page 29. From this Division of the *Tenses*, together with what we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy Method of distinguishing all the Parts of the *Passive*. Thus, for instance, let the Subject of Discourse be the Building of an House. 1. When I say *Domus edificatur*, I mean that it is just now a building, but not finished. 2. When *Edificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain past Time, a building, but not then finished. 3. *Edificabitur*, that some Time hence it shall be a building, without any formal Regard to the Finishing of it. But when I make use of the *Participle Perfect*, I always signify a Thing compleated and ended; but with these Subdistinctions. 1. *Edificata est*; I mean simply, that it is finished, without any Regard to the Time when. 2. *Edificata fuit*; it is finished, and some Time since intervened. 3. *Edificata erat*; it was finished at a certain past Time referred to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Edificata fuerat*; it was finished before a certain Time past referred to, which it was prior. 5. *Edificata erit*; it shall be finished some Time hereafter, either without Regard to a particular Time when, or with Respect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finishing shall be contemporary. And lastly, *Edificata fuerit*; it shall be finished and past before another thing yet future, to which its Finishing shall be prior. And thus we have the different Times or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one another. But then how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used promiscuously? I answer, That this proceeds from one or more of these four Reasons. 1. Because it very frequently happens in Discourse that we have no Occasion particularly to consider these various Relations and Complications of Times; and 'tis the same thing to our Purpose whether the thing is or was done, or a doing; or whether it was done just now, or some Time ago; or whether another Thing was (or shall be) contemporary with, or prior to it: And the Matter being thus, we reckon our selves at Liberty to take several Parts of the Verb at random, as being secure not only of being understood, but also that in these Circumstances whatever we pitch on, when examined by the Rules above, shall be found literally true. 2. 'Tis usual with us to state our selves as present with, and as it were Eye-witnesses of the Things we relate, tho' really they were transacted long before; whence 'tis that we frequently use the Present instead of some past Time. 'Tis to be remarked that there are some Verbs, the Action whereof is in the Sense finished when begun; in which Case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the *Passing* or *Past Tenses*. And 4. The *Present Tense* (which strictly speaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger Acceptation, and sometimes used for the Future, when we signify that the execution is very near, or (according to *Perizonius*) when together with the Action we take in also the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are confin'd to will not allow us to illustrate these Things with Examples. But by them I think we may account for the promiscuous Usage of the *Tenses*, in both Languages; and what cannot be reduced to these, seems to be an Abuse of the Poets, ought not to be made a common Standard. I shall only



ly add for a Proof that these Tenses are not always to be used indifferently that when we signify a thing to be just now finished, we cannot use *Fuerim*, or *fuisset*, but *Sum*, *sim* and *esse*.

3. Whether the Learner should be obliged to get by Heart these Parts the *Passive* that are supplied by *SUM*, or if they should be referred to Construction (to which they seem more naturally to belong) I leave to the Discretion of the Master, and therefore have put them in a smaller Character.

4. Besides these Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be resolved into its own Participles and the Verb *Sum*, tho' their Signification are not precisely the same; as,

*Amo*, *amabam*, *amavi*, *amaveram*, *amabo*.  
*Sum amans*, *eram amans*, *fui amans*, *fueram amans*, *ero amans*,  
*sum amaturus*

*Amor*, *amabar*, *amabor*, *amer*, *amarer*.  
*Sum amatus*, *eram amatus*, *ero amatus*, *amatus sim*, *amatus essem*

5. The Participle in *RUS* with the Verb *SUM* is frequently used instead of the *Future* of the *Indicative*, especially if *Purpose* or *Intention* is signified as, *Profecturus sum*, or *Proficiscar*, I will go, or I am to go; and with *Sim* instead of the *Future Imperfect*, or *Plus-perfect* of the *Subjunctive*; as, *Non dubito quin fit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it. *Non dubito quin esset facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *fecisset*.

6. We have not joined *ERO* with *FUERO* for the *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, because we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different Mood. Tho' it must be owned that it comes nearer in Signification to the *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, than that of the *Indicative*; as, *Ovid. Qui cum victus erit*, much the same as *Victus fuerit*: And so these ancient Lawyers, *Scævola*, *Brutus* and *Manilius* understood the Words of the *Atinian Law*, *Quod subreptum erit, ejus rei aeterna auctoritas esto*. But that a *Preterite Time* there insinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit*, but to the *Preterite Participle* with which it is joined; as they learnedly argue. See *Anulus Gellii* lib. XVII. cap. 7.

7. We have omitted the Termination *MINOR* in the second Person *Plural* of the *Imperative*, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Standard (as the common *Rudiments* do) which is to be found only once or twice. *Plautus, Epid. 5. 2. Fac ego opere arbitraminor*. And *Pseud. 2. 2. Pariprogrediminor*.

8. For the same Reason we have excluded the ancient Termination *ASS* in the *Future Subjunctive* of the first Conjugation; as, *Excantasso* in the *Laws* of the 12 Tables, *Levasso* in *Ennius*, *Abjurasso*, *invitasso*, *Cenasso*, *Levasso*, *Servasso*, &c. in *Plautus*; for *Excantavero*, *Levavero*, &c. to which may be added *ESSO* of the second Conjugation; as, *Licessit*, *Idem*; *Prohibessit*, *Cic. for Licuerit, prohibuerit*; To these some add, *Jussu* for *jussessit* that of *Virg. En. 11. v. 467*.

*Cetera, qua jussu, mecum manus inferat arma*.

But, tho' I was once of that Opinion, yet I now incline with *Vossius* to think that it is only a *Syncope*: But not for the Reason brought for it by him, namely, that the other Examples in *ssu* change *r* into *ss*, as *Levavero*, *levassu*, but because I believe these old *Futures* were formed not from the common *Futures* in *ero*, as he supposes; but from the second Person Sing. of the *Present* of the *Indic.* by adding *so*; as *levas*, *levasso*; *Prohibes*, *prohibesso*: According to which Rule *Jubeo* must have formed *jubeesso*, not *jussu*.

9. Upon the same account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive **ASSERE** formed from **ASSO**; as, *Impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnassere*, in *Plautus*; for *impetraturum esse*, &c.
10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse vel fuisse*, &c. in the *Nominative*; as, *Dicitur amaturus esse*, yet we have contented ourselves with the *Accusative amaturum* and *amatum*, as most common, serving the Distinction between these to Construction. [See Pag. 77.]
11. The Future of the Infinitive Passive is made up of the *First Supine* and the Infinitive Passive of **EO**: And therefore it is not varied in Numbers and Genders, as the Parts made up of the Participle with *Sum*.
12. But the Supine with **IRE** is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as some teach; for such Phrases as these, *Amatum ire, Doctum ire*, are rather the Present than Future Tense.
13. The Participle in **DUS** with *esse* and *fuisse*, is not properly the Future of the Infinitive Passive, as is commonly believed: For it does not so much import Futurity, as Necessity, Duty, or Merit. For there is a great Difference between these two Sentences, *Dicit literas à se scriptum ire*, and *Dicit literas à se scribendas esse*; the first signifying, That a Letter will be written him, or, That he will write a Letter; and the second, That a Letter must be written by him, or, He is obliged to write a Letter. For tho' *Sanctius* and *Messieurs de Port Royal* contend that this Participle is sometimes used for simple Futurity, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnson* have clearly evinced the contrary.
14. It is to be noted, That the Imperative Mood wants the first Person Singular and Plural, because no Man can or needs command or exhort himself: Or, if he does, he must juggle himself out of the first into the second Person, as in that of *Catullus*, speaking to himself, *At tu Catulle destinata mura*, But you *Catullus* continue obstinate.
15. The Present of the Subjunctive is most frequently used instead of the Imperative, especially in forbidding, after *Ne, nemo, nullus*, &c. as, *Vale, Farewell*, for *Vale*. *Ne facias*, Do it not, rather than *Ne fac*. And sometimes the Future of the Subjunctive; as, *Tu videris*, See you to it. *Ne dixeris*, Don't say it. And sometimes also the Future of the Indicative; as, *Non occides*, Thou shalt not kill, for *Ne occide*, or *occidito*. *Sed valebis*, *Neque negotia videbis*, *Cic. i. e. Sed vale meaque negotia vide*. *Referes*, *Ne hoc & nuncius ibis Pelida genitori*, *Virg. i. e. refer & ito*. But 'tis to be remarked that none of these are proper Imperatives; for to the first is understood *oro, rogo, peto*, or the like, with *ut*; as also to the second, with *ut* understood, or *ne* express'd; and the third is only a Command by Consequence, on account of the Authority, Influence or Power of the Speaker. For which Reason, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded these from the Imperative: Tho' the common Rudiments take in the first, and *Alvarus* the second and third. However 'tis observable that we use most Civility and Respect when we use the Subjunctive, and most Authority by the Future of the Indicative, and NTO of the Imperative; which is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are delivered. But this Rule is always followed.
16. The RIS of the second Person Passive is more usual than RE; **ERUNT** of the Perfect of the Indicative Active than **ERE**; especially in Prose, in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met

## III. REMARKS upon ENGLISH Verbs.

1. **A**N English Verb hath only two Tenses, distinguished by different Terminations, and both in the Active Voice, viz. the Present and Preterite. The Present is the Verb itself, and the Preterite is commonly made by adding *ed* to it; or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, Fill, filled; Love, loved.

2. All the other Parts of the Active, and the whole Passive, is made up of the Auxiliary Verbs, Do, Have, Shall, Will, May, Can, and Am; as in Page 31. and in the Example, To love, Page 32, &c.

3. AN English Verb hath different Terminations for the Persons of the Singular Number. The Present hath three or four. The first Person is the Verb it self; the second ends in *est* or *is*; the third in *eth*, *es* or *s*. The Preterite hath only two; the first commonly ending in *ed*, and the second in *est* or *is*. But the third Person singular of the Preterite, and all the Persons Plural, both of it and the Present, cannot otherwise be distinguished than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the Latin.

4. We have two Participles, the Present ending always in *ing*, and the Preterite ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many Irregular English Verbs. But it is to be noted, 1. That that Irregularity relates only to the Termination of the Preterite Tense, and the Passive Participle. 2. That it reaches only such Words as are native, and originally English. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or derived from Words of one Syllable. 4. That where the Preterite is regular, the Passive Participle is the same with it. Except Hewed; Moved; Shewed, Snowed, Sowed; which have Hewn, Mown, Shown, Snown, Sown.

6. These Irregularities may be reduced to the following Heads:

1. The *d* is changed into *t* after *c, ch, sh, f, k, p, x*; and after *s* and *th*, when pronounced hard; and sometimes after *l, m, n, r*, when a short Vowel goes before it; as, Plac't, Snatch't, Fish't, Wak't, Dwelt, Smelt. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one; as, Kept, Slept, Wept, Crept, Swept, Leapt, from keep, sleep, weep, creep, sweep, leap, as also sometimes before *l, m, n, r*, and *v* turned into *s*; as, Feel, felt; Dream, dreamt; Mean, meant; Leave, left.

(2.) When the Present ends in *d*, or *t*, the Preterite is sometimes the same with it; as, Read, Cast, Hurt, Burst, Hit, Quit; and when two Vowels precede, the last is left out; as Spread, sped; Lead, led; Feed, fed; Bleed, bled; Meet, met. When a Consonant comes before *d*, it is sometimes changed into *t*; as, Bend, bent; Lend, lent; Send, sent; Rend, rent; Gird, girt.

(3.) Most of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Lists.

I. Such as have their Preterite and Participle Passive the same.

Awake, awoke.	Find, found.	Pay, paid.	String, stung.
Abide, abode.	Flee, fled.	Say, said.	Swing, swung.
Deferech, befought.	Fling, flung.	Seek, sought.	Swim, swum.
Bind, bound.	Grind, ground.	Sell, sold.	Teach, taught.
Bring, brought.	Gild, gilt.	Sit, sat.	Tell, told.
Buy, bought.	Hang, hung.	Shine, shone.	Think, thought.
Catch, caught.	Hear, heard.	Spin, spun.	Work, wrought.
Dig, dug.	Lay, laid.	Spring, sprung.	Win, won.
Drink, drunk.	Loose, lost.	Stand, stood.	Wind, wound.
Fight, fought.	Make, made.	Stick, stuck.	Wring, wrung.

II. Such as have the Preterite and Participle different; as,

bore, born.	Freeze, froze, frozen.	Shrink, shrank, shrunk.
began, begun.	Get, got, gotten.	Sink, sank, sunk.
bad, bidden.	Give, gave, given.	Slay, slew, slain.
beat, beaten.	Go, went, gone.	Slide, slid, slidden.
bit, bitten.	Grow, grew, grown.	Smite, smote, smitten.
blew, blown.	Hew, hewed, hewn.	Strike, struck, stricken.
chid, chidden.	Hide, hid, hidden.	Speak, spoke, spoken.
chose, chosen.	Hold, held, holden.	Spit, spat, spitten.
clove, cleft.	Know, knew, known.	Strive, strove, striven.
came, come.	Ly, lay, lay'n.	Swear, swore, sworn.
crew, crew'd.	Ride, rode, ridden.	Swell, swell'd, swoll.
durst, dared.	Ring, rang, rung.	Take, took, taken.
did, done.	Rise, rose, risen.	Tear, tore, torn.
drew, drawn.	Run, ran, run.	Thrive, thrived, thriven.
drove, driven.	See, saw, seen.	Throw, threw, thrown.
eat, eaten.	Seeth, sod, sodden.	Tread, trode, trodden.
fell, fallen.	Shake, shook, shaken.	Wear, wore, worn.
flew, flown.	Shear, shorn, shorn.	Weave, wove, woven.
fake, forsook, forsaken.	Shoot, shot, shotten.	Write, wrote, written.

These Preterites, *Bare, Share, Sware, Tare, Ware, Clave, Gat, Begat, Forbrake, Spake, Slang, Sprang, Swang, Wan, Stank, Sank*, are seldom

But, *Beseech'd, Catch'd, Work'd, Digged, Gilded, Girded, Hang'd, Writ*, for *Besought, Caught, &c.* are frequently to be met with.

NOTE, 1. That when the Verb ends in one Consonant, that Consonant is the most part doubled before *ing, ed, est, edst* and *eth*; as, *Worship, worshipping, worshipped, worshippeth, worshippeth*: As also before *as, Bid, bidden*.

NOTE, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common in English Verbs; as, *Lov'd, lov'ft*, for *loved, lovest*;) begins now to be disapproved by the most polite Writers in Prose; but Poets still use it, tho' not so as formerly.

NOTE, 3. That the Preterite Active and the Participle Passive (when one serves for both) are thus distinguished: When it hath nothing before it but the Nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the Preterite Active; but if it hath any part of the helping Verb *AM*, it is the Participle Passive. EXCEPT *Come, Gone, Run, Set, Risen, Fallen, Grown, Withered*, and like Intransitive Verbs, which have frequently the Passive Signs *AM, S, &c.* instead of *HAVE* in the Perfect Tense; and *WAS, WAST*, instead of *HAD*, in the Plus-perfect; as, *Veni, I am come; Veneram, I am come*.

NOTE, 4. That tho' the Latin Perfect frequently answers both to *HAVE DID* (or the Preterite Termination *ED, &c.*) yet they seem to be thus distinguished. *DID* or *ED, &c.* respects a certain past Time, in which the thing was finished, or a finishing; as, *I wrote, or did write yesterday: HAVE* speaks of a thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular time that it happened at; as, *I have written my Letter, i. e. just now*. I have read of Julius Cæsar, i. e. some time or other. The first of these is the Preterperfect Definite, and the other the Preterperfect Indefinite.

NOTE, 5. That *SHALL* and *WILL* by Mr. Brightland are thus distinguished;

In the First Person simply **SHALL** foretells ;  
 In **WILL** a Threat, or else a Promise dwells.  
**SHALL** in the Second and the Third does threat ;  
**WILL** simply then foretells the future Feat.

By Mr. Turner thus,

**WILL** imports the *Will* or *Purpose* of the Person it is joined with ; **SHALL** implies the *Will* of another, who *promises* or *threatens* to do the Thing, cause it to be done, *permits* it, *commands* it, or the like.

*De Formatione Verborum.*

**Q**Uatuor sunt Terminationes Verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur ; sciz. o Præsentis, i Præteriti, um Supini, & re Infinitivi, hoc modo ;

1. Ab o formantur am & em.
2. Ab i formantur ram, rim, ro, stem & se.
3. Ab um formantur u, us & rus.
4. Are formantur reliquæ omnes ; nempe, bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.

Of the Formation of Verbs.

**T**HERE are four Terminations a Verb, from which all the are formed ; namely, o of the Present, i of the Preterite, um of the Supine, and re of the Infinitive, after this Manner ;

1. From o are formed am and em.
2. From i, ram, rim, ro, ste and se.
3. U, us and rus are form'd from um.
4. All other Parts from re do come. As, bam, bo, rem, a, e and Ns and dus, dum, do and di.

In every complete Verb there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS, viz. the Present of the Indicative in O, the Preterite or Perfect in I, the first Supine in UM, and the Present of the Infinitive in RE. The first (which is therefore called the THEME or Root of the Verb) gives Origine to the whole Verb, either mediately or immediately. The Preterite, the first Supine, and the Present of the Infinitive, come from it immediately, and all the other Parts from them ; except the Future of the Indicative in AM, and the Present of the Subjunctive in EM or AM, which by this Scheme are also formed immediately from the Present in O.

It is to be noted, That the Preterites and Supines of the First Conjugation end commonly in avi and atum, of the Second in ui and itum, and of the Fourth in iei and itum. But the Third Conjugation cannot be reduced to a general Rule, and there are a great many Exceptions in the other three, which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar is advanced to that Part of Grammar that treats particularly of them.

But the Present of the Infinitive, and all the other Parts of the Verb, are regularly formed after one fixed and uniform manner.

In the foregoing Rules of Formation, I have, for the Ease of the Memory, put the Terminations instead of the Moods and Tenses ; but for the greater Plainness they may be thus expressed,



I. From the Present of the Indicative are formed the Future of the Indicative of the Third and Fourth Conjugations in *am*, and the Present of the Subjunctive of the First in *em*, and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the Perfect of the Indicative are formed the Pluperfect of it, the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future of the Subjunctive, and the Perfect of the Infinitive.

III. From the First Supine is formed the Last Supine, the Participle Perfect and Future Active.

IV. From the Present of the Infinitive are formed the Imperfect of the Indicative, the Future of the same when it ends in *BO*, (viz. in the first and second Conjugations,) the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, the Imperative, the Participles Present and Future Passive, and the Gerunds.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in *IO* of the Third Conjugation retain *i* before *unt*, *to*, *ebam*, *am*, *ens*, *endus*, *endum*; but lose it in the Present of the Infinitive, and Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

NOTE, 2. That the last Person Plur. of the Imperative may be formed by adding *o* to the same Person of the Present of the Indicative; as, *Amant*, *amant*; *docent*, *docento*.

NOTE, 3. That the Passive Voice is formed from the same Tenses of the Five (except where *Sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the Present of the Infinitive Passive of the Third Conjugation may be formed by taking *s* from the Second Person of the Present of the Indicative Active; as, *legis*, *legi*; or when the Verb is Deponent, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as *profiscor*, *profiscisci*; *mori*, *mori*.

NOTE, 5. That the Present of the Infinitive Active, and the Second Person of the Indicative and Imperative Passive in *te*, are always the same.

NOTE, 6. That the Second Person Plural of the Present of the Indicative, of the Imperative, are the same in the Passive Voice.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the Principal Parts are wanting, these Parts commonly wanting that come from them: For which Reason Grammarians give Supines to a great many Verbs, which yet are not to be found in any Author, because the Participles formed from them are found: And they suppose likewise all Deponent Verbs of old to have had the Active Voice, and consequently Supines, tho' now lost.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the Fourth in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are Eight Verbs in *eo* of the first Conjugation, viz. *beo*, *creo*, *screo*, *meo*, *calceo*, *laqueo*, *nauseo*, *nudeo*. There are Twenty two in *io* of the First, viz. *glacio*, *macio*, *crucio*, *curio*, *nuntio*, *fascio*, *radio*, *bio*, *retalia*, *spolio*, *amplio*, *lanio*, *somnio*, *pio*, *vario*, *decurio*, *decenturio*, *succenturio*, *surio*, *basio* and *vitio*; and Twelve of the Third, viz. *cipio*, *facio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *specio*, *sedio*, *fugio*, *incipio*, *rapio*, *pario*, *quatio*; with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, necessary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the respective Changes in the Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, in which I have distinguished them from the Body or Essential Part of the Verb by a Division or Hyphen. And perhaps this alone, without any particular Rule, might be a sufficient Direction. For to conjugate one Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but instead of the Essential Part of the one (which is all that stands before *o*, *eo*, or *io* of the Present of the Indicative) to substitute the Essential Part of the other; and then to add to it the additional Syllables it receives

in Conjugation as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the *Preterit* and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to reckon all *be* *i* and *um* for the Body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllables to it, as in *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2. In Verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i*, as in *Note 1*.

There is yet another way of the Formation of Verbs, differing only from the First Method in this, that what Parts according to it are formed from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But tho' this may be the more natural way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

## De Verbis Irregularibus.

**IRREGULARIA** Verba vulgo recensentur octo, viz. *Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero & Fio, cum Compositis.*

## Of Irregular Verbs.

**He IRREGULAR** Verbs are commonly reckoned Eight, viz. *Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero & Fio, with their Compounds.*

## S U M.

*Sum, fui, esse, To be.*

## INDICATIVUS.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

## Præsens.

<i>Sum,</i>	<i>I am,</i>	<i>Sim,</i>	<i>I may or can be,</i>
<i>Es,</i>	<i>Thou art,</i>	<i>Sis,</i>	<i>Thou may'st or canst be,</i>
<i>Eſt:</i>	<i>He is:</i>	<i>Sit:</i>	<i>He may or can be,</i>
<i>Sumus,</i>	<i>We are,</i>	<i>Simus,</i>	<i>We may or can be,</i>
<i>Eſtis,</i>	<i>Ye are,</i>	<i>Sitis,</i>	<i>Ye may or can be,</i>
<i>Sunt.</i>	<i>They are.</i>	<i>Sint.</i>	<i>They may or can be.</i>

## Imperfectum.

<i>Eram,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>Essem,</i>	<i>I might, &amp;c. be,</i>
<i>Eras,</i>	<i>Thou wast,</i>	<i>Esſes,</i>	<i>Thou mightest be,</i>
<i>Erat:</i>	<i>He was:</i>	<i>Esſet:</i>	<i>He might be:</i>
<i>Eramus,</i>	<i>We were,</i>	<i>Essemus,</i>	<i>We might be,</i>
<i>Eratis,</i>	<i>Ye were,</i>	<i>Esſetis,</i>	<i>Ye might be,</i>
<i>Erant.</i>	<i>They were.</i>	<i>Esſent.</i>	<i>They might be.</i>

## Perfectum.

<i>Fui,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>	<i>Fuerim,</i>	<i>I may have been,</i>
<i>Fuiſti,</i>	<i>Thou haſt been,</i>	<i>Fueris,</i>	<i>Thou may'st have been,</i>
<i>Fuit:</i>	<i>He hath been:</i>	<i>Fuerit:</i>	<i>He may have been:</i>
<i>Fuimus,</i>	<i>We have been,</i>	<i>Fuerimus,</i>	<i>We may have been,</i>
<i>Fuiſtis,</i>	<i>Ye have been,</i>	<i>Fueritis,</i>	<i>Ye may have been,</i>
<i>Fuerunt,</i>	<i>They have been.</i>	<i>Fuerint.</i>	<i>They may have been.</i>

*vel ero.*

# Part II. Chap. III. of Verbs.

53

## Plusquamperfectum.

eram, I had been, Fuisset, I might, &c. have  
 eras, Thou hadst been, Fuisset, Thou mightest have  
 erat: He had been: Fuisset: He might have  
 eramus, We had been, Fuisset, We might have  
 eratis, Ye had been, Fuisset, Ye might have  
 erant. They had been. Fuissent. They might have

or had been.

## Futurum.

eram, I shall or will be, Fuero, I shall have been,  
 eras, Thou shalt or wilt be, Fueris, Thou shalt have been,  
 erit: He shall or will be: Fuerit: He shall have been:  
 erimus, We shall or will be, Fuerimus, We shall have been,  
 eritis, Ye shall or will be, Fueritis, Ye shall have been,  
 erant. They shall or will be. Fuerint. They shall have been.

## IMPERATIVUS.

## INFINITIVUS.

Es vel } Be thou, Pres. Esse, To be.  
 Esto, }  
 Esto: Let him be: Perf. Fuisse, To have been.  
 Este vel } Fut. Futurum To be about  
 Estote, } esse vel fuisse. to be.

## PARTICIPIUM.

Sunto. Let them be. Fut. Futurus. About to be.

The Compounds of SUM are, Adsum, absum, desum, intersum, praesum, subsum, supersum, insum, prosum & possum. The first Eight are con- sidered as the Simple SUM: Insu- wants the Preterite and its Descendents; we do not use Insui, insuisti, insueram, &c.

PROSUM, To do good, has a d where SUM begins with e; as,

[Pres. Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est: pro-sumus, prod-estis, pro sunt.  
 Imp. Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat: prod-eramus, &c.

Prod-esset, prod-essetis, prod-esset: prod-essimus, &c.  
 IMPERAT. Prod-esto, prod-este. INFINIT. Pres. Prod-esse.

POS- SUM should be pot- sum (as being compounded of potis, able, and Sum) for the better Sound, t is changed into s before another, and retained be- fore any other Letter: And for the same Reason f is always taken away. Pot- and posse are contracted for Potessem, potesse, which yet are to be found in old Authors; thus,

¶ Possum, potui, posse, To be able.

## INDICATIVUS.

Possum, potes, potest: possumus, potestis, possunt.  
 Poteram, poteras, poterat: poteramus, poteratis, poterant.  
 Potui, potuisti, potuit: potuimus, potuistis, potuerunt v. potuere.  
 Potueram, potueras, potuerat: potueramus, potueratis, potuerant.  
 Potero, poteris, poterit: poterimus, poteritis, poterunt.

D 3

SUB.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Possim,	possis,	possit:	possimus,	possitis,	possint.
<i>Imp.</i> Possim,	posses,	possent:	possimus,	possitis,	possent.
<i>Perf.</i> Potuerim,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.
<i>Plus.</i> Potuissim,	potuisses,	potuisset:	potuissimus,	potuissetis,	potuissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Potuero,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.

## INFINITIVUS.

*Præs.* Possē.*Per.* Potuissē.*The rest wanting*

## E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

## INDICATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Eo,	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
<i>Imp.</i> Iham,	ibas,	ibat;	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
<i>Perf.</i> Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivimus,	ivistis,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{iverunt,} \\ \text{v. ivent} \end{array} \right.$
<i>Plus.</i> Iveram,	iveras,	iverat;	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
<i>Fut.</i> Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Eam,	eas,	eat;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
<i>Imp.</i> Irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
<i>Perf.</i> Iverim,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
<i>Plus.</i> Ivissim,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissimus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Ivero,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

## IMPERATIVUS.

## INFINITIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I,} \\ \text{Ito,} \end{array} \right.$ ito;	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ite,} \\ \text{itote,} \end{array} \right.$ eunto.	<i>Præs.</i> Ire.
		<i>Perf.</i> Ivissē.
		<i>Fut.</i> Iturum $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{esse,} \\ \text{fuisse.} \end{array} \right.$

## PARTICIPIA.

## SUPINA.

## GERUNDIA.

<i>Præs.</i> Iens, <i>Gen.</i> euntis.	1. Itum.	Eundum.
<i>Fut.</i> Iturus, -2, -um,	2. Itu.	Eundū.
		Eundo.

NOTE, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That of old, Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect in *ibam* and Future in *ibo*, of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence* and some in *Virgil* and *Horace*.After the same manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, viz. *Adiabo, exeo, ceco, redco, subeo, pereco, ceco, inco, praeo, anteco, prodeco, praetero, transeo; Adibam, adibo, adiens, adeuntis, adendum, &c.* But *ambio* is an irregular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE

NOTE, That in the Compounds, *ivi, ivisti, &c.* are seldom used, but they are contracted into *isti*; as, *adii, adisti*, and sometimes *adisti*: So *adim, adierim, &c.*

QUEO, *I can*, and NEQUEO, *I cannot*, are conjugated the same way as QUEO; they only want the Imperative and the Gerunds; and the Participles are scarcely in Use.

V O L O.

Volo, volui, velle, *To will, or be willing.*

I N D I C A T I V U S.

*Pras.* Volo, vis, vult; volumus, vultis, volunt.  
*Imp.* Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Perf.* Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uerunt.  
*Plus.* Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Plus.* Vol-am, -voles, -volet; -volemus, -voletis, -volent.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

*Pras.* Velim, velis, velit; velimus, velitis, velint.  
*Imp.* Vellem, velles, vellet; vellemus, velletis, velent.  
*Perf.* Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plus.* Vol-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Plus.* Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

I N F I N I T I V U S.

P A R T I C I P I U M.

*Pras.* Velle. *Perf.* Voluisse. *Pras.* Volens.  
*The rest are wanting.*

N O L O.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

I N D I C A T I V U S.

*Pras.* Nolo, non-vis, non-vult; nolumus, non-vultis, nolunt.  
*Imp.* Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Perf.* Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uerunt.  
*Plus.* Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Plus.* Nol-am, -noles, -nolet; -nolemus, -noletis, -nolent.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

*Pras.* Nollim, nolis, nollet; nolumus, nolitis, nolint.  
*Imp.* Nollem, nolles, nollet; nollemus, nolletis, nolent.  
*Perf.*



## 56 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

*Perf.* Nol. uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint

*Plus.* Nol. uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uisserint

*Fut.* Nol. uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint

*IMPERATIVUS. INFINITIVUS. PARTICIPIUM*

*Præs.* { Noli, { nolite, { *Pr.* Nolle. *Præs.* Nolens  
{ Nolito: { nolitote. { *Perf.* Noluisse. *The rest wanting*

### M A L O.

Malo, malai, malle, *To be more willing.*

#### I N D I C A T I V U S.

*Pr.* Malo, mavis, mavult; malumus, mavultis, malum

*Imp.* Mal. ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant

*Per.* Mal. ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -ue

*Plus.* Mal. ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant

*Fut.* Mal. am, -es, -et; *Gr. This is scarcely in Use.*

#### S U B J U N C T I V U S.

*Pr.* Malim, malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malint

*Imp.* Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, malle

*Per.* Mal. uerim, -ueris -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint

*Plus.* Mal. uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uisserint

*Fut.* Mal. uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint

#### I N F I N I T I V U S.

*Præs.* Malle.

*Perf.* Maluisse.

*NOTE,* That *Volo*, *Nolo* and *Malo*, retain something of the Third Conjugation; for *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis* are contracted of *Volis*, *volit*, *volitis*; and changed into *u*, for of old they said *Volit*, *volitis*.

*Nolo* is compounded of *Non-volo*, and *Malo* of *magis volo*.

### F E R O.

#### V O X A C T I V A.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring or suffer.*

#### I N D I C A T I V U S.

*Pr.* Fero, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt

*Imp.* Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat; ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant

*Per.* Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, { tulerunt, -ue

*Plus.* Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat; tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant

*Fut.* Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

*SU*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

ueris. Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.  
 uiffes. 1<sup>a</sup>. Ferrem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.  
 IPIU. 2<sup>a</sup>. Tul-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.  
 Tolens. 3<sup>a</sup>. Tul-iffem, -iffes, -iffet; -iffemus, -iffetis, -iffent.  
 wantin. 4<sup>a</sup>. Tul-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimis, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

1<sup>a</sup>. { Fer, ferto; { ferte, ferunto.  
 { Fertote, fertote.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Ferre.  
 Per. Tuliffe.  
 Fut. Laturum  
 esse vel fuiffe.

PARTICIPIA.

SUPINA.

GERUNDIA.

malum. 1<sup>a</sup>. Ferens. 1. Latum.  
 -eban. 2<sup>a</sup>. Laturus, -a -um. 2. Latu.  
 runt, -ue. GERUNDIA.  
 -uerat. Ferendum,  
 Ufe. Ferendi,  
 Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror, latus, ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

1<sup>a</sup>. Feror, { feris, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.  
 { ferre,  
 2<sup>a</sup>. Fer-ebat, { ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.  
 { ebare,  
 3<sup>a</sup>. Latus sum vel fui, latus es vel fuisti, &c.  
 4<sup>a</sup>. Latus eram vel fueram, latus eras vel fueras, &c.

5<sup>a</sup>. Ferar, { fereris, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.  
 { ferere,

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

1<sup>a</sup>. Ferar, { feraris, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur,  
 { ferare,  
 2<sup>a</sup>. Ferrer, { fereris, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.  
 { ferrere,  
 3<sup>a</sup>. Latus sim vel fuerim, latus sis vel fueris, &c.  
 4<sup>a</sup>. Latus essem vel fuiffem, latus esses vel fuiffes, &c.  
 5<sup>a</sup>. Latus fuero, latus fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

1<sup>a</sup>. { Ferre, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.  
 { Fertor,

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

1<sup>a</sup>. Ferri. Perf. Latus, -a, -um.  
 2<sup>a</sup>. Latum { esse, Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.  
 { fuiffe.  
 3<sup>a</sup>. Latum iri.

SU

Non

# 58 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers, fert, fertis, fertō, fertis, ferram, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor*, being contracted of *Feris, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur and feritor*.

Also *Fer* is contracted of *fere*: Which in like manner has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, duco, facio*, they having *dte, duc, fac*, instead of *dice, duce, face*.

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the same way as the Simple; as, *Affero, attuli, allatum; Ausero, abstuli, ablatum; Differo, distuli, dilatatum; Confero, contuli, collatum; Infero, intuli, illatum; Offero, obtuli, oblatum; Effero, extuli, elatum*: So *Circumfero, persero, transfero, deferō, praefero, antefero, praefero*.

## F I O.

*Fio, factus, fieri, To be made, or to become.*

### INDICATIVUS.

*Præs.* *Fio, fis, fit; simus, fitis, fiunt.*  
*Imp.* *Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.*  
*Pers.* *Factus sum vel fui, factus es vel fuisti, &c.*  
*Plus.* *Factus eram vel fueram, factus eras vel fueras, &c.*  
*Fut.* *Fiām, fies, fiet; siemus, fietis, fient.*

### SUBJUNCTIVUS.

*Præs.* *Fiam, fias, fiat; siamus, fiatis, fiant.*  
*Imp.* *Fierem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.*  
*Pers.* *Factus sim vel fuerim, factus sis vel fueris, &c.*  
*Plus.* *Factus essem vel fuissem, factus esses vel fuisses, &c.*  
*Fut.* *Factus fuero, factus fueris, &c.*

### IMPERATIVUS.

*Præs.* { *Fi,\* fito; fitote, fiunto.*

### INFINITIVUS.

*Pr.* *Fieri.*  
*Per.* *Factum esse, fuisset.*  
*Fut.* *Factum iri.*

### PARTICIPIA.

*Per.* *Factus, -a, -um.*  
*Fut.* *Faciendus, -a, -um.*

### SUPINUM.

*Factu.*

\* Tho' *Fi* is rejected by some Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it Place here, not only because it is to be found in *Plautus*, but also in *Horace, Lib. 2. Sat. 5. ver. 38, Fi cognitor ipse*, according to the MSS. and Editions.

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 59

NOTE, 1. That *Fio* is the Passive of *Facio*, To make, (which is regular) instead of *Facior*, which is not in use: Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change into *i*, are regular; as, *afficior*, *affectus*, *affici*; *perficior*, *perfectus*, *perfici*.

NOTE, 2. That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperative *AE. fac*, and their Passive Form (when used) *fio*; as, *Calefacio*, *incalfacio*, *benefacio*; *calefac*, *calefio*, &c. At these compounded with a Preposition change the *a* into *i*, and have *ficio* and *fictor*. There are some compounded of *facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the First Conjugation; as *magnifico*, *significo*.

To the Irregular Verbs may be reduced *EDO*, to eat, which in some of its Parts falls in with the Verb *Sum*; thus,

IND. Pres. *Edo*, es, est; estis, - - -

UB. Imp. *Essem*, *esses*, *esset*; *essemus*, *essetis*, *essent*.

IMPERAT. *Es* *vel esto*, - - - *este* *vel estote*. INFIN. *Esse*.

Likewise its Compounds, *Comedo*, *comes*, *comest*, &c. and *Exedo*, *exes*, *est*, &c. But all these may likewise be regularly conjugated, *Edo*, *edis*, *it*, &c. *Ederem*, *ederes*, *ederet*, &c.

### Of Defective Verbs.

Tho' some of the Irregular Verbs already mentioned want some of their Parts, and upon that account may be called also *Defective Verbs*, yet

**DEFECTIVE Verbs** here we chiefly understand such as want considerable Branches, or are used only in few *Tenses* and *Persons*. We shall set down these that most frequently occur. 1. *AIO*, I say; *INQUAM*, I say; *FO-TEM*, I should be; *AUSIM*, I dare; *FAXIM*, I'll see to it, or, I will do it; *AVE* and *SALVE*, God save you, Hail, Good morrow; *CEDO*, I give me; *QUESO*, I pray.

IND. { Pres. *Aio*, ais, ait; aiunt.  
Imp. *Aiebam*, *ebas*, *ebat*; *ebamus*, *ebatis*, *ebant*.  
Perf. . . . . *aisti*, . . . . .

UB. { Pres. . . . . *aias*, *aiat*; . . . . . *aiatis*, *aiant*.  
IMPERAT. *ai*. [PARTICIP. Pres. *aiens*.]

INDIC. { Pres. *Inquam*, *inquis*, *inquit*; *inquimus*, *inquitis*, *inquunt*.  
Imp. . . . . *inquebat*; . . . . . *inquebant*.  
Perf. . . . . *inquisti*, . . . . .  
Fut. . . . . *inquies*, *inquiet*; . . . . .

IMPERAT. *inque*, *ito*. PARTICIP. Pres. *inquirens*.

UB. { Imp. { *Forem*, *fores*, *foret*; *foremus*, *foretis*, *forent*.  
Plus

F. *Fore*, to be, or to be about to be, the same with *futurum esse*.

UB. { Pres. *Ausim*, *ausis*, *ausit*; . . . . .  
Perf. *Faxim*, *faxis*, *faxit*; . . . . . *faxint*.  
Fut. *Faxo*, *faxis*, *faxit*; . . . . . *faxitis*, *faxint*.

NOTE, That *faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *facere* and *fecero*.

IMPERAT. { *Ave*, *avete*.  
[ *Avero*, *avetote*. ]  
{ *Salve*, *salvete*.  
[ *Salveto*, *salvetote*. ]  
*Cedo*, *cedite*.  
INDIC. Pres. *Queso*, *quæsumus*.

INFIN. [ *avere*.  
[ *salvere*. ]

# 60 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

II. These three Verbs, ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the Preterite Tense and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called PRETERITIVE Verbs; thus,

Odi, oderam, oderim, odissem, odero, odisse.  
 Memini, memineram, meminero, meminisse.  
 Cœpi, cœperam, cœperim, cœpissim, cœpero, cœpisse.

But under these they comprehend also the Signification of the other Tenses; as, *Memini*, I remember, or I have remembered; *Memineram*, I remembered, or I had remembered, &c. So *Odi*, I hate, or I have hated; *Cœpi*, I begin, or I have begun. Tho' I am not fully satisfied as to this last, for I do not know any Example where *Cœpi* doth clearly signify the Present Tense.

*Memini* hath also the Imperative *Memento*, Remember thou; *Memento*, Remember ye. Some add *Memineris*, Remembring, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add *NOVI*, because it frequently hath the Signification of the Present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*; tho' it comes from *Novi*, which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That *Odiētes* is to be found in *Petronius*; *Odiatur* in *Seneca*; *Cœpio* in *Plautus* and *Terence*. See *Voss. Analog. Lib. III. Cap. 39*.

NOTE, 2. That the Participles *Cœptus* and *Ōsus*, with its Compounds *Ōsus*, *exosus*, are in use among the best Authors; but *Perodi* and *Exodi* are not.

III. *Feris*, To speak, wants the first Person of the Present Indic. and perhaps the whole Present of the Subjunctive, for we do not say *Fer*, or *Fer*, as rarely *Feris*, *setur*, &c. So likewise *Daris* and *Deris*, but not *Dor* or *Der*, to be given. The Compounds of the First, as *Effor*, *Affor*, are rare; but the Compounds of the other, as *Addor*, *Reddor*, are common.

IV. Most of the other Defective Verbs are but single Words, and rarely to be found but among Poets; as, *Infit*, he begins; *Desit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *Si*, as *Sis*, for *Si vis*, If thou wilt; *Sultis*, for *Si vultis*, If ye will; *Sodes*, for *Si audes*, If thou dar'st.

## Of Impersonal Verbs.

THESE are also a kind of Defective Verbs, which for the most part are used only in the Third Person Sing. They have the Sign IT before them in English; as, *Pœnitet*, it repents; *Placet*, it pleases: And are thus conjugated;

	Pres.	Imperf.	Perfekt.	Plusquam.	Future.
IND.	Pœnitet,	pœnitebat,	pœnituit,	pœnituerat,	pœnitebit.
SUB.	Pœniteat,	pœniteret,	pœnituerit,	pœnituisset,	pœnituerit.
INF.	Pœnitere,		pœnituisse.		

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the passive Voice, especially such as otherwise have no Passive; as,

	Pres.	Imperf.	Perfekt.	Plusquam.	Fut.
IND.	Pugnatur,	pugnabatur,	pugnatum	est, -atum	erit, fuerat, pugnabitur.
SUB.	Pugnetur,	pugnaretur,	pugnatum,	sit, fuerit, -atum	esset, fuisset, -atum fuerit.
INF.	Pugnari,		pugnatum	esse, fuisset,	pugnatum

Non



## Part II. Chap. IV. of Participle. 61

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any Person or Number, by putting that which stands before other Verbs, after the Impersonals in the Cases which they govern; as, *Poenitet me, te, illum*, I repent, thou repentest, he repenteth, instead of *Ego poeniteo*, &c, which is scarcely Latin. *Placet tibi, tibi, illi*, It pleases me, thee, him; or, I please, thou pleasest, &c. *Pugnatur à me, à te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.

NOTE, 2. That Impersonals are not used in the Imperative, but instead of we take the Subjunctive.

NOTE, 3. That Impersonal Verbs are very often used personally, especially in the Plural Number; as, *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, Pertinet, Decet, Solet, Licet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Praestat*, &c. For we say, *Tu mihi solas places*; *Nulli nocet*; *Multa homini accidunt*, *contingunt*, *eveniunt*; *Parvum parva decet*, &c. But 'tis to be remarked that they are generally Impersonal, when an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood follows; for tho' I can say, *Tu places mihi*, yet I cannot say, *Si places audire*, but *Si placet tibi audire*. Again we cannot say, *Ego contigi esse domi*, but *Me contigit esse domi*, or *Mibi contigit esse domi*. Likewise *Evenit illum mori*, or *Ut ille moreretur*; but not *Ille evenit mori*.

[I shall not here enquire what is the Word understood to Impersonal Verbs, whether it is a Noun of the like Significations; as, *Pugna pugnatur*, or the Word *Res* or *Negotium*, or the Infinitive Mood. Tho' I incline to think that any one of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the First, to others the Second, and to others the Third, may be most fitly understood, as the Nature of the Verb and good Sense shall direct us. This we are sure of, that the Word understood can never be a Person properly so called, but a Thing; for which Reason, and the want of the two primary Persons, viz. the First and Second, they are called Impersonal, tho' some are much offended with the Name.]

### CAP. IV. De Participio.

**T**ria sunt præcipuè consideranda in Participio, viz. *Tempus, Significatio & Declinatio*.

I. *Tempora Participiorum sunt Tria, Præsens, Præteritum & Futurum*.

Præs. Præt. Fut.	Temp-de- clinant in	ns.
		tus, sus, xus.
		rus, dus.

II. *Significatio Participiorum est vel Activa, vel Passiva, vel Neutra, ad modum verborum à quibus descendent.*

### CHAP. IV. Of Participle.

**T**here are three things especially to be considered in a Participle, viz. *Time, Signification and Declension*.

I. *The Tenses of Participles are Three, the Present, Preterite and Future.*

Particip- of the	Pres. Præt. Fut.	Tense end in	ns.
			tus, sus, xus.
			rus, dus.

II. *The Signification of Participles is either Active, or Passive, or Neuter, after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.*

Parti-

Participia { in *ns* & *rus* plerumque  
sunt *Activa*.  
in *dus* semper *Passiva*.  
in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, plerum-  
que sunt *Passiva*, inter-  
dum vero *Activa*, vel  
etiam *Communia*.

III. Omnia Participia sunt  
Adjectiva: quæ desinunt in  
*ns* sunt *Tertia Declinationis*,  
reliqua autem omnia *Prima*  
& *Secundæ*.

Participles { in *ns* and *rus* are gen-  
rally *Active*.  
in *dus* always *Passive*.  
in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, are gen-  
rally *Passive*, sometime  
*Active*, or also *Com-*  
*mon*.

III. All Participles are *Ad-*  
*jectives*: These which end in  
are of the Third Declension  
but all the rest are of the First  
and Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, which  
its Signification always imports some Time.

It is so called, because it *partakes* of a Noun and a Verb, having Gender  
and Cases from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Num-  
ber from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [See Chap. IX.] have two Participles, one of the  
Present Time ending in *ns*; as, *Amans*, Loving: and another of the Future  
ending in *rus*; as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewise two Participles, one of the Present  
ending in *tus*, *sus*, or *xus*; as, *Amatus*, Loved; *Visus*, Seen; *Flect-*  
Bowed, (to which some add one in *us*, viz. *Mortuus*, Dead;) and another  
of the Future ending in *dus*; as, *Amandus*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two Participles, as the Actives; as, *Sedens*,  
Sitting, *Sessurus*, About to sit.

4. *Active INTRANSITIVE* Verbs have frequently three Participles  
as, *Carens*, Wanting, *Cariturus*, About to want, *Cavendus*, To be wanted;  
*Dolens*, Grieving, *Doliturus*, About to grieve, *Dolendus*, To be grieved: And  
sometimes four; as, *Vigilans*, Watching, *Vigilaturus*, About to watch, *Vig-*  
*ilatus*, Watched, *Vigilandus*, To be watched.

5. DEPONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four Participles  
as, *Loquens*, Speaking, *Locuturus*, About to speak, *Locutus*, Having spoken,  
*Loquendus*, To be spoken; *Dignans*, Vouchsafing, *Dignaturus*, About  
to vouchsafe, *Dignatus*, Having vouchsafed, or being vouchsafed, *Digna-*  
*ndus*, To be vouchsafed.

NOTE, That in some Dependent Verbs the Participles *Perfected* hath both  
*Active* and *Passive* Signification, tho' that of the Verb itself is only *Active*.  
as, *Testatus*, Having testified, or being testified. So *Mentitus*, Meditated,  
*Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, That it is essential to a Participle, I. That it come immediately  
from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it also include Time. Therefore  
*Tunicatus*, Coated, *Larvatus*, Masked, and such like, are not Participles  
because they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs. And *Ignarus*, ignorant,  
*Elegans*, neat, *Circumspectus*, circumspect, *Tacitus*, silent, *Falsus*, false,  
*Prodigus*, Prodigal, &c. are not Participles, because they do not signify  
Time.

The

There are a kind of Adjective Nouns ending in **UNDUS**, which approach very near to the Nature of Participles, such as *Errabundus*, *Ludibundus*, *Opulabundus*. They are formed from the Imperf. of the Indic. and their Signification is much the same with the Participle of the Present Time; only they signify *Abundance* or a great deal of the Action, according to *A. Gellius*, lib. 11. Cap. 15. or, according to others, they signify the same with the Participles of Frequentative Verbs, when these are not in use. See *Gronovius* & *Gellius*, as above cited.

## APPENDIX of Gerunds and Supines.

**GERUNDS** and **SUPINES** (which because of their near Relation to Verbs, are by some not improperly called *Participial Words*) are a sort of Substantive Nouns, expressing the Action of the Verb in general, or in the abstract. **GERUNDS** are Substantives of the second Declension, and come in all their Cases, except the Vocative. **SUPINES** are Substantives of the fourth Declension, having only two Cases, the Accusative in **UM**, which makes the First Supine, and the Ablative in **U**, which makes the Second.

[*Vossius*, Lib. 8. Cap. 54. thinks that the Last Supine may sometimes be Dative; as, *Durum tactu*, i. e. *tactu*; for the Datives of the Fourth Declension of old ended in *u*. Also Lib. 7. Cap. 8. he takes notice, that tho' these Supines have sometimes other Cases, (as *irrisu esse*) yet they are only reckoned as Supines by Grammarians, when the First come after Verbs of Motion, and the Second after Adjective Nouns: Thus *dignus irrisu* is a Supine (according to them;) Non *sine irrisu audientium*, is not.]

## De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.

## CAP. V.

## De Adverbio.

**IN ADVERBIO** potissimum spectanda est ejus significatio.

Adverbiorum Significatio variae sunt: earum verò recipiæ ad sequentia capita vocari possunt.

## Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

## CHAP. V.

## Of Adverb.

**I**N an **ADVERB** is chiefly to be considered its Signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are various: But the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads.

**ADVERB** is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a Verb, or other Adverb, expresses some Circumstance, Quality or Manner of their Signification.

Adverbs denoting **CIRCUMSTANCE** are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time* & *Order*.

1. Adverb

Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold, viz. Adverbs signifying Motion,		2. Adverbs of TIME are threefold, viz. such as signify,	
(1) in a Place, (or Rest)	Ubi?	Where?	(1) Being in Time, either
	Hic,	Here.	Nunc, Now.
	Illic,	} I th.	Hodie, To Day.
	Isthic,		Tunc, } Tben.
	Ibi,		Tum, } Yesterday.
	Intus,	Within.	Heri, } Heretofore.
	Foris,	Without.	Dudum, } The Day before.
	Ubique,	Every where.	Pridem, } Three Days ago.
	Nusquam,	No where.	Pridie, } Lately.
	Alicubi,	Some where.	Nudius tertius, } Presently.
(2) to a Place,	Alibi,	Else where.	Jamjam, } Immediately.
	Ubiuis,	Any where.	Mox, } By and by.
	Ibidem,	In the same Place.	Statim, } Instantly.
	Quo?	Whither?	Protinus, } Straight Way.
	Huc,	Hither.	Illico, } To morrow.
	Isthuc,	Thither.	Cras, } The Day after.
	Intro,	To within.	Postridie, } Two Days hence.
	Exro,	To without.	Perendie, } Not yet.
	Eo,	To that Place.	Nondum, } QUANDO? When?
	Alio,	To another Place.	Aliquando, } Sometimes,
(3) towards a Place,	Aliquo,	To some Place.	Nonnunquam, } Ever.
	Eodem,	To the same Place.	Interdum, } Newer.
	Quorsum?	Whitherward?	Semper, } In the mean time
	Versus,	Towards.	Nunquam, } Daily.
	Horsum,	Hitherward.	Interim, } QUAMDIU? How long?
	Illorsum,	Thitherward.	Tamdiu, } So long.
	Sorsum,	Upward.	Jamdiu, } Long ago
	Deorsum,	Downward.	Jamdudum, } Jampridem,
	Antrorsum,	Forward.	(3) Vicissitudo or Repetition of Time
	Retrosum,	Backward.	QUOTIES? How often?
(4) from a Place,	Dextrosom,	To the right hand.	Sæpe, Often.
	Sinistrosom,	To the left hand.	Raro, Seldom.
	Unde?	From whence?	Toties, So often.
	Hinc,	From hence.	Aliquoties, For several times
	Illinc,	} From thence.	Vicissim, By Turns.
	Isthinc,		Alternatim, } Again.
	Inde,		Rursus, } Ever and anon.
	Aliunde,	From else where.	Iterum, } Semel, Once.
	Alicunde,	From some Place.	Bis, Twice.
	Sicunde,	If from any Place.	Ter, Thrice.
(5) through or by a Place,	Utrinque,	On both Sides.	Quater, Four Times.
	Superne,	From above.	3. Adverb
	Inferne,	From below.	
	Cœlitus,	From Heaven.	
	Funditus,	From the Ground.	
(6) through or by a Place,	Qua?	Which Way?	
	Hac,	This Way.	
	Illac,	That Way.	
	Ist hac,	Another Way.	

3. Adverbs of ORDER; as,

Then.	Deinceps,	So forth.	Primò,	àm,	First.
And, Thereafter.	Denuo,	Of new.	Secundò,	àm,	Secondly.
Hinc, Henceforth.	Denique,	Finally.	Tertiò,	àm,	Thirdly.
Moreover.	Postremo,	Lastly.	Quartò,	àm,	Fourthly.

4. The other Adverbs expressing QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either Absolute or Comparative.

1. QUALITY simply; as, Bene, well; male, ill; fortiter, bravely: And innumerable others that come from Adjective Nouns or Participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, Profectò, certè, sanè, planè, nò, utique, ita, etiam, truly, verily, yes; quidni, why not? omnino, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as, Forte, forsàn, fortassis, fori, happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, Non, haud, not; nequaquam, not at all; neutiquam, by no means; minime, nothing less.

5. PROHIBITION; as, Ne, not.

6. SWEARING; as, Hercle, pol, edepol, mecastor, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. EXPLAINING; as, Utpote, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum, nempe, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, Scorsum, apart; separatim, separately; sigillatim, one by one; viritini, Man by Man; oppidanum, Town by Town, &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, Simul, unà, pariter, together; generaliter, generally; universaliter, universally; plerumque, for the most part.

10. INDICATION or POINTING at; as, En, ecce, lo, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, Cur, quare, quomobrem, why, wherefore? Num, an, whether? Quomodo, qui, how? To which add, Ubi, quo, quorsum, unde, qua, quando, quamdiu, quoties.

1. EXCESS; as, Valde, maxime, magnopere, summo, admodum, oppido, perquam, longè, very much, exceedingly; nimis, nimium, too much; prorsus, penitus, omnino, altogether, wholly; magis, more; melius, better; pejus, worse; fortius, more bravely; And optime, best; pessimè, worst; fortissimè, most bravely; and innumerable others of the Comparative and Superlative Degrees.

2. DEFECT; as, Ferme, ferè, propè, propemodum, penè, almost; parum, little; paullo, paullulum, very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, potius, satius, rather; potissimum, præcipue, præsertim, chiefly, especially; imò, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, Ita, sic, adeo, so; ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi, as, as if; quemadmodum, even as; satis, enough; itidem, in like manner.

5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, Aliter, secus, otherwise; alioqui or alioquin, else; nedum, much more, or much less.

6. ABATEMENT; as, Sensim, paullatim, pedetentim, by Degrees, piece-meal; vix, scarcely; vix, hardly, with Difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, Tantum, solum, modò, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum, only.



## 66 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS seem originally to have been contrived to press compendiously in one Word what must otherwise have required more; as, *Sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semel*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vice*; *his*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Hec*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing else but *Adjective Nouns or Pronouns*, having the *Preposition* and *Substantive* understood; as, *quod*, *ed*, *eodem*; for *ad qua*, *ea*, *eadem* [*loca*]; or *cui*, *ei*, *eo* [*loco*]; for of old these Datives ended in *o*. Thus, *qua*, *hac*, *illac*, &c. plain *Adjectives* in the *Abl. Sing. femin.* the Word *via*, a Way, and ising understood. Many of them are *Compounds*; as, *quomodo*, i. e. *quo quemadmodum*, i. e. *ad quem modum*; *quomobrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare*, i. e. [*pro*] *qua re*; *quorsum*, i. e. *versus quem* [*locum*]; *scilicet*, i. e. *licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet*; *ilicet*, i. e. *ire licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in magnopere*, i. e. *magno opere*; *nimirum*, i. e. *ni* [*est*] *mirum*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That of *Adverbs* of *Place*, these of the First Kind answer to Question *ubi*? the Second to *quod*? the Third to *quorsum*? the Fourth to *unde*? and the Fifth to *qua*? To which might be added a Sixth, *Quatenus*, How far? answered by *Usque*, until; *Hucusque*, hitherto; *Eousque*, *Hactenus*, hitherto, thus far; *Eatenus*, so far as; *Quadantenus*, in measure. But these are equally applied to *Place* and *Time*.

NOTE, 3. That *Adverbs* of *Time* of the first Kind answer to *quamdiu* the Second to *quandiu*, and *quandiu* or *quamprius*? of the Third to *quoties*?

NOTE 4. That *Adverbs* of *Quality* generally answer to the Question *modo*?

NOTE, 5. That some *Adverbs* of *Time*, *Place* and *Order*, are frequently the one for the other; as *Ubi*, where and when; *inde*, from that *Place* that *Time*, thereafter, next; *hactenus*, thus far, with respect to *Place*, or *Order*, &c. Other *Adverbs* also may be classed under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That some *Adverbs* of *Time* are either *past*, *present* or *future*; as, *Jam*, already, now, by and by; *Olim*, long ago, sometime hereafter.

NOTE, 7. That *Interrogative Adverbs* of *Time* and *Place* doubled of the *Adjection* *cumque* answer to the English *Adjection* *soever*; as, *ubicumque*, wheresoever; *quoquo* or *quocumque*, whithersoever, &c. *Adjectives* holds also in other *Interrogative Words*; as *quisquis*, or *quicquid* whosoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcumque*, how many soever; *quantus quocumque*, or *quantuscumque*, how great soever; *qualis qualis*, or *qualiscumque*, of what Kind or *Quality* soever; *ut ut*, or *utcumque*, however, or howsoever;

### CAP. VI.

#### De Præpositione.

I. PRæpositiones quæ regunt Accusativum, sunt viginti octo, viz.

Ad,	To.
Apud,	At.
Ante,	Before.

### CHAP. VI.

#### Of præpositions.

THE *Præpositions* govern the *Accusative* are twenty eight, viz.

Adversus,	} Against
Adversum,	
Contra,	

}	On this Side.	Propter,	For, hard by.
		Per,	By, through.
}	About.	Præter,	Besides, except.
		Penes,	In the Power of.
}	Towards.	Post,	After.
	Without.	Pone,	Behind.
}	Between, among.	Secus,	By, along.
	Within.	Secundum,	According to.
}	Beneath.	Supra,	Above.
	Nigh to.	Trans,	On the farther side.
}	For.	Ultra,	Beyond.

Præpositiones quæ re-  
Ablativum, sunt quin-  
que, nempe,

}	From.	
	Without.	
}	With.	
	Without the Know- ledge of.	
}	Before.	

Ha quatuor interdum  
Ablativum, interdum Ab-  
lativum regunt.

In, into.  
Under.

II. The Prepositions which go-  
vern the Ablative are Fifteen,  
viz.

}	De,	Of, concerning.
	E,	
}	Ex,	Of, out of.
	Pro,	For.
}	Præ,	Before.
	Palam,	With the Knowledge of.
}	Sine,	Without.
	Tenus,	Up to.

III. These Four govern some-  
times the Accusative, and some-  
times the Ablative.

Super, Above.  
Subter, Beneath.

PREPOSITION is an indeclinable Word, shewing the Relation of one  
to another.

That *Pone* and *Secus* rarely occur; and *Prope*, nigh; *Usque*, unto;  
*Ob*, about; *Versus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the  
governing the Accusative; and *Procul*, far, among those govern-  
ing the Ablative, are Adverbs; and do not govern a Case of themselves; but  
the preposition *ad*, which is understood to the first four, and *a* or *ab*, to  
the last two. To which perhaps may be added *Clam*, which is joined very fre-  
quently with the Accusative; as, *Clam patre*, or *patrem*; a being understood  
with *ad*, and *quod ad* to the other.

The separate Use of these PREPOSITIONS, there is another Use  
of them, namely, their being put before a vast Number of Nouns, and  
Compositions, which creates a great Variety, and gives a peculiar Ele-  
gance and Beauty to the Latin Tongue.

There are five or six Syllables, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, O which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are not to be found in compound Words: However they generally add something to the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	} signifies	{	round about,	} as,	{	ambio,	to surround.
Di,			asunder,			divello,	to pull asunder.
Dis,			again,			distraho,	to draw asunder.
Re,			aside or apart,			relego,	to read again.
Se,			together,			sepono,	to lay aside.
Con,						concreasco,	to grow together.

## C H A P. VII.

## Of Interjection.

**A**N INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown into Discourse to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

- Some of them express,*
1. JOY; as, Evax, hey, brave, io.
  2. GRIEF; as, Ah, hei, heu, cheu, ah, alas, woes me.
  3. WONDER; as, Papæ, O strange; Vah, bah.
  4. PRAISE; as, Euge, well done.
  5. AVERSION; as, apage, away, be gone, phy, tushy.
  6. EXCLAIMING; as, Oh, Proh! O.
  7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, Atat, ha, aba,
  8. IMPRECATION; as, Væ, wo, pox on't.
  9. LAUGHTER; as, Ha, ha, he.
  10. SILENCING; as, Au, 'st, pax, Silence, husb, 'st.
  11. CALLING; as, Eho, io, ho, so bo, bo, O.
  12. DERISION; as, Hui, away with.
  13. ATTENTION; as, Hem, bah.

NOTE, 1. That the same Interjection denotes sometimes one Passion sometimes another; as, Vah, which is used to express Joy, and Surprise, Wonder, &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are natural Sounds, common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That Nouns are used sometimes for Interjections; as, Mith a Pox! With a Mischief! Infandum! O shame! fy, fy! Mith O wretched! Nefas! O the Villany!

INTERJECTION is a compendious way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word; and used only to represent the Passions and Emotions of the Soul, that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express the Substance and Quickness of the other.

## C H A P. VIII.

## Of Conjunction.

**A** CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word that joins Sentences together; and thereby shews their Dependence upon one another,

Of these some are called,

**COJUNCTIVE**; as, Et, ac, atque, que, and; etiam, quoque, item, tum, cum, both, and. Also their Contraries, Nec, neque, neu, neve, neither, nor.

**DISJUNCTIVE**; as, Aut, ve, vel, seu, five, either, or.

**CONCESSIVE**; as, Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, altho', albeit.

**ADVERSATIVE**; as, Sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui, but; tamen, amen, veruntamen, verum enim vero, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

**CAUSAL**; as, Nam, namque, enim, for; quia, quippe, quoniam, quia, quod, that, because.

**INFERENTIAL** or **RATIONAL**; as, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, propterea; quapropter, quocirca, wherefore; proinde, therefore; cum, in, seeing, since; quandoquidem, forasmuch as.

**TERMINAL** or **PERFECTIVE**; as, Ut, uti, that, to the end that.

**CONDITIONAL**; as, Si, sin, if; dum, modo, dummodo, provided, on Condition that; siquidem, if indeed.

**EXCEPTIVE** or **RESTRICTIVE**; as, Ni, nisi, unless, except.

**MINUTIVE**; as, Saltem, certe, at least.

**SUSPENSIVE** or **DUBITATIVE**; as, An, anne, num, whether; annon, whether, not; necne, or not.

**EXPLETIVE**; as, Autem, vero, now, truly; quidem, equidem, indeed.

**ORDINATIVE**; as, Deinde, thereafter; denique, finally; insuper, moreover; ceterum, moreover, but, however.

**DECLARATIVE**; as, Videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c. to name.

1. That the same Words, as they are taken in different Views, are *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*; as, An, anne, &c. are *Suspensive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs*. The same may be said of the *Ordinative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be ranked under *Adverbs of Order* and *Explaining*. So likewise *Utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb of Wishing*, when more narrowly considered, is no other than the *Conjunction Uti* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, [I wish] understood; as, *Utinam adjuvasses*; *Ut te Deus male persequeretur*. But since both of them are indeclinable, there is no great advantage in distinguishing them.

2. That other Parts of Speech compounded together, supply the place of *Conjunctions*; as, *Postea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, because, &c. Which are made up of the *Prepositions post, præter*, and *ea* the *Pronoun*.

3. That some *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER, stand in a Sentence; as, *Et, aut, nec, si*, &c. Some, contrary to their natural Order, stand in the second Place, viz. *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem*, &c. And some may indifferently be put either first or second, viz. *Nam, enim, siquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque*, &c. Hence arose the Division into *Prepositive, Subjunctive* and *Common*.

## ¶ C H A P. IX.

APPENDIX, containing some Observations concerning the various Divisions and Significations of Words, especially *Noun* and *Verb*.

1. **A**LL Words whatsoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A *SIMPLE* Word [*Simplex*] is that which was never more than one; as *Sum*, *lego*. A *COMPOUND* [*Compositum*] is that which is made up of more Words, or of a Word and some Syllabical Adjection; as, *perlego*, *derelinquo*, *egomet*.

2. All Words whatsoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A *PRIMITIVE* Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as *Justus*, *lego*. A *DERIVATIVE* [*Derivativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as *Justitia*, *lectio*.

I. Besides the more general Divisions of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned p. 5. and 22; there are other particular Divisions of them taken from various Significations and Derivations: The most remarkable whereof are these;

I. With respect to Signification.

1. A *COLLECTIVE* [*Collectivum*] is a Substantive Noun which signifies many in the singular Number; as, *Populus*, a People's exercise, Army.

2. An *INTERROGATIVE* Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] by which we ask a Question; as *Quis*? Who? *Uter*? which of the two? *Qualis*? of what kind? *Quantus*? How great? *Quot*? How many? these, when they are used without a Question, are called *INDEFINITE*.

3. A *RELATIVE* Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective which has respect to something spoken before; as, *Qui*, *ille*, *ipse*, &c. *Alius*, *relinquens*, *ceteros*, *unum*, *qualis*, *quantus*, &c.

4. A *PARTITIVE* Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis*, *nullus*, *quisque*, &c. or a Part of many; as, *Quidam*, *aliquis*, *neuter*, *nemo*, &c.

5. A *NUMERAL* Noun [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which signifies Number, (of which there are four principal Kinds:)

(1.) *CARDINAL*, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Unus*, *duo*, *tres*.

(2.) *ORDINAL*, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Primus*, *secundus*, *tertius*, &c.

(3.) *DISTRIBUTIVE*, [*Distributivus*]; as, *Singuli*, *bini*, *terni*, &c.

(4.) *MULTIPLICATIVE*, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex*, *duplex*, &c.

II. With respect to Signification and Derivation.

1. A *PATRONYMICK* Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Substantive derived from another Substantive Proper, signifying one's Pedigree or Lineage; as *Priamides*, the Son of *Priamus*; *Priamis*, the Daughter of *Priamus*; *Ecias*, the Daughter of *Etes*; *Nerine* the Daughter of *Nereus*. *Patronymicks* are generally derived from the Name of the Father. Poets (for others seldom use them) derive them also from the Grandfather of a Nation or People, and also from Countries and Cities; as *Achilles* the Son, Grand son, Great Grand son, or one of the Posterity of *Achilles*; *Julius*, the Romans, from their first King *Romulus*; *Sicels*, from



## Part II. Chap. IX. of Appendix, &c. 71

of Sicily, of Troy, &c. Patronymicks of Men end in *des*; of Women *as* and *ne*. These in *des* and *ne* are of the First, and these in *is* and *ne* of the Third Declension.

An **ABSTRACT Noun** [*Abstractum*] is a Substantive derived from an Adjective expressing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without regard to the Thing in which the Quality is; as, *Bonitas*, Goodness; *Dulcedo*, Sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With respect to these Abstract Nouns, the Adjectives from which they come are called **CONCRETES**, besides the Quality, they also confusedly signify something as the Subject, without which they cannot make Sense.

A **GENTILE or PATRIAL Noun** [*Gentile or Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive Proper, signifying one's Country; as, *Scotus*, Scottish; *Arpinus*, *Edimburgensis*, *Taodunanus*; a Man born in Scotland, *Arpinus*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgh*, *Dundee*; from *Scotia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edimburgum*, *Taodunum*.

A **POSSESSIVE Noun** [*Possessivum*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive whether Proper or Appellative, signifying Possession or Propriety; as, *Scoticus*, *Herculeus*, *Paternus*, *Herilis*, *Famineus*, of or belonging to *Scotland*, *Hercules*, a Father, a Master, a Woman; from *Scotia*, *Hercules*, *Pater*, *Horus*, *Famina*.

A **DIMINUTIVE Noun** [*Diminutivum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Substantive or Adjective respectively, importing a Diminution, or lessening of its Signification; as *Libellus*, a little Book; *Chartula*, a little Paper; *Opusculum*, a little Work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*; *minus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parvus*, *candidus*. These end for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the same Gender with their Primitives.

A **DENOMINATIVE Noun** [*Denominativum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia*, Favour; *Vinea*, a Vine; *Senator*, a Senator; from *gratus*, *vinum*, *senex*; *Celestis*, heavenly; *humus*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *caelum*, *homo*, *aurum*.

A **VERBAL Noun** [*Verbale*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from a Verb; as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Leccio*, a Lesson; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *Amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio*; *Amabilis*, lovely; *Capax*, capacious; *volucer*, swift; from *Amo*, *cipio*, *volo*.

Lastly, There are some Nouns derived from Participles, Adverbs and Prepositions; as, *Fictitius*, counterfeit; *Crastinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *Contrarius*, contrary; from *Fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

Therefore, That the same Nouns, according to the different Respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the above-mentioned Classes; as, *Quis* is an Interrogative, Relative or Partitive; *Pietas*, an Abstract or Denominative.

Pronouns are divided into four Classes, viz.

**DEMONSTRATIVES**, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*.

**RELATIVES**, *Ille*, *ipse*, *ille*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.

**POSSESSIVES**, *Mens*, *tuns*, *suns*, *noster*, *vester*.

**PATRIALS or GENTILES**, *Nestras*, *vestras*, *enjas*.

Of them also two are **INTERROGATIVES**, *Quis* & *enjas*.

1. Verbs with respect to their Figure or Frame, are either **SIMPLE**; as, *I love*; Or, **COMPOUND**; as *Redamo*, I love again.

2. With respect to their *Species or Origine*, are either **PRIMITIVE** *Lego*, I read : or **DERIVATIVE** ; as, *Lectito*, I read frequently.

3. With respect to their *Conjugation*, are either **REGULAR** ; as *Amo*, or **IRREGULAR** ; as, *Volo*, *vis*, &c.

4. With respect to their *Constituent Parts*, are either **COMPLETE** *Amo* ; or **DEFECTIVE** ; as, *Inquam* : or **REDUNDANT** ; as, *edidit*, &c.

5. With respect to their *Persons*, are either **PERSONAL** ; as, *Amo*, or **IMPERSONAL** ; as *Poenitet*.

6. With respect to their *Terminations*, they end either in *O* ; as, *Amor* ; or in *R* ; as, *Amor* : or in *M* ; as, *Sum*.

7. With respect to their *Signification*, Verbs are either **Substantive** *Adjective*.

(1.) A **SUBSTANTIVE** Verb [*Substantivum*] is that which simply the Affirmation of Being or Existence ; as, *Sum*, *fin*, *existo*, &c.

(2.) An **ADJECTIVE** Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own ; as, *Amo* : i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active*, *Passive* and *Neuter*.

[1.] An **ACTIVE** Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of Person or Nominative before it ; as, *Amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

[2.] A **PASSIVE** Verb [*Passivum*] is that which affirms Passion of Person or Nominative before it ; as, *Amor*.

[3.] A **NEUTER** Verb [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Passion of its Nominative ; but simply signifies the State, Posture, Quality of Things ; as, *Sto*, *sedeo*, *maneo*, *duro*, *vireo*, *flaveo*, *sapio*, *esco*, &c. To stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be to rest.

An *Active* Verb is again divided into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

[1.] An **ACTIVE TRANSITIVE** Verb [*Transitivum*] is that which conveys the Action passeth from the Agent to some other Thing ; as, *Amo patrem*.

[2.] An **ACTIVE INTRANSITIVE** Verb [*Intransitivum*] is that which conveys the Action passeth not from the Agent to any other ; as, *Curro*, I run ; and I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Question **WHOM?** or **WHAT?** if a rational Answer can be returned, the Verb is *Transitive* ; as, *Woom*, or *do you teach?* Answ. *A Boy, the Grammar* : If not, it is *Intransitive* ; as, *What do you run, go, come, live, sleep, &c.* To which no rational Answer can be given, unless it be by a Word of like Signification, which some indeed these Verbs have after them ; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live pleasant Life ; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long Journey.

**NOTE**, 1. That the same Verb is sometimes *Transitive*, and sometimes *Intransitive* ; as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, begin an Action, *Plant*.

**NOTE**, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs are often Englished with the Signs of a passive Verb ; as, *Caleo*, I am hot ; *Palleo*, I am pale ; *Abiit*, James is gone.

**NOTE**, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs want the Passive unless impersonally used, as the *Intransitive* Verbs most frequently are ; as, *pugnatur*, *itur*, *ventum est*.

Tho' all Verbs whatsoever, with respect to their Signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing Classes, yet because Grammarians

er with the Signification of Verbs, are obliged also to consider their Termination, and finding that all Active Verbs did not end in o, neither all Passive in or, it was judged convenient to add to the former, two or three other Classes or Kinds of them, viz. Deponent, Common and Neuter-passive.

[1.] A DEPONENT Verb [Deponens] is that which has a Passive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification; as, *Loquor*, I speak; *morior*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [Commune] is that which under a Passive Termination has a Signification either Active or Passive; as, *Criminor*, I accuse, I am accused; *Dignor*, I think, or I am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER PASSIVE [Neutro passivum] is that which is half Active and half Passive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Passive; as, *Fio*, *factus sum*, to be made. Or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Audeo*, *ausus sum*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gavisus sum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kinds of Derivative Verbs, which are not very material, there are three kinds of them derived from Verbs, which deserve to be remarked, viz. Frequentatives, Inceptives and Desideratives.

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [Verba frequentativa] signify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the last Supine, by changing *atu* into *ito* from Verbs of the first, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the first; as, *Clamo*, to cry frequently, from *clamo*; *Dormito*, to sleep often, from *dormio*. From them also are formed other frequentatives; as, *Curro*, *curso*, *curso*; *jacio*, *jacso*, *jacso*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulso* and *pulto*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [Verba inceptiva] signify that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the second Person Sing. Pres. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the Third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Caleo*, *cales*, *calesco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [Verba desiderativa] signify a Desire of Action. They are formed from the last Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Cæturio*, I desire to sup; *Ejurio*, I am hungry, or I desire to eat.

9. Lastly, In Construction, Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as Vocative Verbs, or Verbs of naming, Verbs of remembering, of want, of teaching, of accusing, &c.

In the preceding Division of Verbs, with respect to their Signification, I have receded a little from the common Method; and in particular I have given a different Account of Neuter Verbs from that commonly received by grammarians, who comprise under them all Intransitive Verbs, tho' their Significations be never so much Active. But this I did partly from the Reason of the Name, which imports a Negation both of Action and Passion, and partly to give a distinct View of the Significations of Verbs, without regard to their Terminations, which in that respect are purely accidental and arbitrary.

I have also excluded from the Divisions of Verbs those called NEUTRAL PASSIVES [Lat. Neutra passiva] because originally they are Active Verbs; the primary Signification of *vapulo*, is *pereo* or *ploro*; of *exulo*, *extra somam eo*; of *veneo*, *venum eo*; of *nubo*, *velo*. *Liceo* indeed is a very singular Verb, for in the Active Voice it signifies passively, and in the Passive actively.

## PARS TERTIA. PART THIRD.

De Sententiis, sive Of Sentences, or  
Oratione. Speech.

**S**ENTENTIA est quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata; ut, *Tu legis; Tu legis libros; Tu legis libros bonos; Tu legis libros bonos domi* (a).

**A** SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind expressed by two or more Words put together; as, *You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.*

## C A P. I.

De Syntaxi, sive Constructione.

**S**YNTAXIS est res a vocum in Oratione Compositio.

Ejus partes sunt duæ, Concordantia & Regimen (b).

## CHAP. I.

Of Syntar, or Construction.

**S**YNTAX is the right Ordering of Words in speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord and Government.

Concor-

(a) We are now arrived at the principal Part of Grammar; for the great End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of little Use to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to Practice, and make them answer the great Purposes for which they are intended. To the Attainment of this End there are two Things absolutely necessary, viz. I. That in Speech we dispose and frame our Words, according to the Laws and Rules established among those whose Language we speak. II. That in like manner we know what is spoken or written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and resolve it into the several Parts of which it is made up. The first of these is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the second is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The first shews us how to speak the Language our selves; and the second, how to understand it when spoken by others. But it must be owned, that there is such a necessary Connexion between them, that he that is Master of the first cannot be ignorant of the second.

(b) NOTE, 1. That the Difference between Concord and Government consists chiefly in this, that in Concord there can no Change be made in the Accidents, that is, Gender, Case, Number or Person of the one, but the like Change must also be made in the other: But in Government, the first Word (if declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the second. In Concord, the first Word may be called the Word directing, and the second the

P  
Conco  
didio  
in quib  
Regin  
regit c  
I. D  
C  
F. A  
tivo.  
2. Vo  
vo.  
3. R  
dente.  
4. S  
flamiv  
R  
A Dje  
Su  
nume  
a Vi  
a Fg  
b D

Word di  
the seco  
NOTE  
noted th  
ters (a)  
Direct  
Govern  
Words  
NOTE  
the Que  
to it  
discover  
NOTE  
flamiv  
Homo  
NOTE  
underst  
if it we  
sad Th

## Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 75

*Concordantia* est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.

*Regimen* est quando dictio regit certum casum.

*Concord* is when one Word agrees with another in some Accidents.

*Government* is when a Word governs a certain Case.

### I. De Concordantia.

**C**oncordantia est quadruplex.

1. *Adjectivi cum Substantivo.*

2. *Verbi cum Nominativo.*

3. *Relativi cum Antecedente.*

4. *Substantivi cum Substantivo.*

#### REGULA I.

**A**djectivum concordat cum Substantivo in genere, numero & casu; ut,

a *Vir* b *bonus.*

a *Femina* b *casta.*

b *Dulce* a *pomum.*

### I. Of Concord.

**C**oncord is fourfold.

1. *Of an Adjective with a Substantive.*

2. *Of a Verb with a Nominative.*

3. *Of a Relative with an Antecedent.*

4. *Of a Substantive with a Substantive.*

#### RULE I.

**A**n Adjective agrees with a Substantive in Gender, Number and Case; as,

A good Man.

A chaste Woman.

A sweet Apple.

#### R E G.

*Word directed*: In Government the first is called the *Word governing*, and the second the *Word governed*.

**NOTE 1.** That for the greater Ease both of Master and Scholar, we have noted these Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with the Letters [a] and [b]; the Word *Directing* or *Governing* with [a], and the Word *Directed* or *Governed* with [b]; or where there are two Words *Directing* or *Governing*, the first with [a], and the second with [ae]; and where two Words *Directed* or *Governed*, the first with [b], and the second with [bb].

**NUMBER 1. NOTE 1.** That the way to find out the *Substantive* is to ask the Question *WHO*, or *WHAT*? to the *Adjective*; for that which answers to it is the *Substantive*. And the same Question put to the *Verb* or *Relative*, discovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent*.

**NOTE 2.** That another *Adjective* sometimes supplies the Place of a *Substantive*; as, *Amicus certus*, A sure Friend; *Bona serena*, Good Venison. *Homo* being understood to *Amicus*, and *Caro* to *Ferina*.

**NOTE 3.** That the *Substantive THING* [*Negotium*] is most frequently understood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the *Neuter Gender*, as if it were a *Substantive*; as, *Triste*, [*supple Negotium*] i. e. *Res tristis*; A sad Thing. *Bona*, [*supple Negetia*] i. e. *Res bone*; Good Things.



# 76 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

## REG. II.

2 **VERBUM** concordat cum Nominativo ante se in numero & persona; ut,

- <sup>a</sup> Ego <sup>b</sup> lego.
- <sup>a</sup> Tu <sup>b</sup> scribis.
- <sup>a</sup> Praeceptor <sup>b</sup> docet.

## RULE II.

**A VERB** agrees with the Nominative before it in Number and Person; as,

- I read.
- You write.
- The Master teacheth.

## ANNOTATIONES.

3 1. **VERBA** Substantiva, Vocandi & Gestus habent utrinque Nominativum ad eandem rem pertinentem; ut,

- <sup>b</sup> Ego <sup>a</sup> sum <sup>bb</sup> discipulus.
- <sup>b</sup> Tu <sup>a</sup> vocaris <sup>bb</sup> Joannes.
- <sup>b</sup> Illa <sup>a</sup> incedit <sup>bb</sup> Regina.

4 2. ¶ **EXCEP.** Infinitivus Modus Accusativum ante se habet; ut,

Gaudeo <sup>b</sup> te <sup>a</sup> valere.

1. *Substantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming and Gesture have a Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the same thing; as,*

- I am a Scholar.
- You are named John.
- She walks [as] a Queen.

2. ¶ **EXCEP.** The Infinitive Mood has an Accusative before it; as,

I am glad that you are well.

3. ¶ **ESSE**

*Num. 2. NOTE, That the Infinitive Mood frequently supplies the Place of the Nominative; as, Mentiri non est meum, To lie is not mine, [or my Property.]*

*Num. 3. 1. Substantive Verbs are Sum, fio, forem and existo.*

2. Verbs of Naming are these Passives, Appellor, dicor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor; to which add, Videor, existimor, oror, constitutor, salutor, designor, &c.

3. Verbs of Gesture are, Eo, incedo, venio, cubo, sto, sedeo, evado, sugio, dormio, somnio, maneo, &c.

*NOTE, That any Verb may have after it the Nominative, when it belongs to the same thing with the Nominative before it; as, Audivi hoc puer; I heard it being, [or when I was] a Boy. Defendi Rempublicam adolescens, non deseram senex; I defended the Commonwealth [when I was] a young Man, I will not desert it [now that I am] old, Cic.*

*Num. 4. NOTE, That when the Particle THAT [in Lat. QUOD, or UT] comes between two Verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the Nominative Case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood; as, Aiunt Regem adventare; They say [that] the King is coming; Rather than, Aiunt quod Rex adventat. Turpe est eos qui bene nati sunt turpiter vivere; 'Tis a shameful thing that they who are well born should live basely; Rather than, Ut ii turpiter vivant. See p. 43.*

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 77

3. ¶ ESSE habet eundem casum post se quem ante se; ut,

b Petrus cupit a esse bb vir doctus.

Scio b Petrum a esse bb virum doctum.

b Mihi b negligenti a esse non licet.

## REG. III.

\* RELATIVUM Qui, quæ, quod, concordat cum Antecedente in genere & numero; ut,

a Vir sapit b qui pauca loquitur.

4. Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit verbo Nominativus; ut,

3. ¶ ESSE hath the same Case after it that it hath before it; as,

Peter desires to be a learned Man.

I know that Peter is a learned Man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

## RULE III.

THE Relative Qui, quæ, quod, agrees with the Antecedent in Gender and Number; as,

He is a wise Man who speaks little.

1. If no Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative to the Verb; as, *Præ-*

NUM. 5. NOTE, 1. That we frequently say, *Licet nobis esse bonos*; We may be good. *Tibi expedit esse sedulum*; 'Tis expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuisse pius*; It never hurted any Man that he hath been pious: But then the Accusative, *Nas, te, illum*, &c. is understood; thus, *Licet nobis [nos] esse bonos*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That if *Esse*, and the other Infinitives of Substantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming, &c. have no Accusative or Dative before them, the Word that follows (whether Substantive or Adjective) is to be put in the Nominative; as, *Dicitur esse vir*; He is said to be a Man. *Non videtur esse sapiens*; He seems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante suum obitum*; No Man should be called happy before his Death.

NUM. 6. NOTE, 1. That the Antecedent is a Substantive Noun that goes before the Relative, and is again understood to the Relative. Wherefore it will not be amiss to teach the Scholar to supply it every where; thus, *Beatorum ad ripam Rhodani convenient* (*Idlenens*) is an Enemy to Vertue. *Cave segnitie*, quæ [*seguities*] est inimica virtuti. Nay Cicero himself, but especially Cæsar, frequently repeat the Substantive; as, *In oppidum per fugisti, quo in oppido*, &c. You fled to a Town, in which Town, Cic. *Diem dicunt, quo ad ripam Rhodani convenient*, They appoint a Day, on which Day they should meet upon the Bank of the River Rhodanus, &c.

NOTE, 2. That when the Relative respects a whole Sentence, it is put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Joannes mortuus est, quod mihi summo dolori est*; John is dead, which is a great Grief to me.

NOTE, 3. That the Person of the Relative is always the same with that of its Antecedent; as, *Ego qui doceo*; I who teach. *Tu qui discis*; You who learn. *Lectio quæ docetur*; The Lesson which is taught.

# 78 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue;

Præceptor <sup>a</sup> qui <sup>b</sup> docet.

8. 2. At si interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit ejus casus quem Verbum aut Nomen sequens, vel Præpositio præcedens regere solent;

Deus <sup>b</sup> quem <sup>b</sup> colimus.

<sup>b</sup> Cujus <sup>a</sup> munere vivimus.

<sup>b</sup> Cui nullus est <sup>a</sup> similis.

<sup>a</sup> A <sup>b</sup> quo facta sunt omnia.

The Master who teacheth.

2. But if a Nominative come between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be of that Case, which the Verb or Noun following, the Preposition going before, use to govern; as,

God whom we worship.

By whose Gift we live.

To whom there is none like.

By whom all things were made.

## ANNO TATIO.

9. ¶ Duo vel plura Substantiva singularia Conjunctione [Et, ac, atque, &c.] copulata, habent Adjectivum, Verbum vel Relativum plurale; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Petrus & <sup>aa</sup> Joannes <sup>b</sup> qui <sup>b</sup> sunt <sup>b</sup> docti.

Two or more Substantives Singular coupled together with a Conjunction [Et, ac, atque, &c.] have a Verb, Adjective or Relative plural; as,

Peter and John who are learned.

REG. IV.

Num. 9. Notz. 1. That when the Substantives are of different Genders, the Adjective or Relative plural must agree with the Masculine rather than the Feminine or Neuter; as, Pater & mater qui sunt mortui, The Father and Mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the Substantives signify things without Life, the Adjective, or Relative plural, must be put in the Neuter Gender; as, Divitiæ, Secus, gloria in oculis sita sunt; Riches, Honour and Glory are set before your Eyes.

NOTE 2. That when two or more Nominatives are of different Persons, the Verb plural must agree with the First Person, rather than the Second; and the Second, rather than the Third; as, Si tu & Tullia valetis, ego & Cicero valemus; If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

Notz 3. That the Adjective or Verb frequently agree with the Substantive or Nominative that is nearest them, and are understood to the rest; as, Et ego in culpa sum & tu, Both I and you are in the Fault: Or, Et ego & tu es in culpa. Nihil hic desit nisi carmina, There is nothing here wanting but Charms; or, Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt. This manner of Construction is most usual, when the different Words signify one and the same thing, or much to the same Purpose; as, Mens, ratio & consilium in senibus est; Understanding, Reason and Prudence is in old Men.

Notz 4. That Collective Nouns, because they are equivalent to a Plural Number, have sometimes the Adjective or Verb in the Plural Number; as, Pars virginis casti, A part of them were scourged. Turba runit, The Crowd rusheth.

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 79

## REG. IV.

**NUM** Substantivum concordat cum alio eandem rem significante in casu; ut,  
*a* Cicero *b* Orator.  
*a* Urbs *b* Edinburgum.  
*a* Filius *b* Deliciae matris suae (*a*).

## RULE IV.

**ONE** Substantive agrees with another signifying the same thing in Case; as,  
 Cicero the Orator.  
 The City Edinburgh.  
 A Son the Darling of his Mother.

## II. De Regimine.

**REGIMEN** est triplex,  
 1. Nominum.  
 2. Verborum.  
 3. Vocum indeclinabilium.

## Of Government.

**GOVERNMENT** is threefold,  
 1. Of Nouns.  
 2. Of Verbs.  
 3. Of Words indeclinable.

### REGIMEN Nominum.

#### § 1. Substantivorum.

#### REG. I.

**NUM** Substantivum regit aliud rem diversam significantem in Genitivo;

*a* Amor *b* Dei.  
*a* Lex *b* Naturae.

### I. The Government of Nouns.

#### § 1. Of Substantives.

#### RULE I.

**ONE** Substantive governs another signifying a different thing in the Genitive; as,  
 The Love of God.  
 The Law of Nature.

## ANNOTATIONES.

\* 1. Si posterius Substantivum adjunctum habet

1. If the last Substantive have an Adjective of Praise beat

(d) To these four Concords some add a Fifth, viz. that of the Responsive, agreeing with its Interrogative in Case; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam?* Pater. Who gave you Money? My Father. *Quo cares?* Libro. What do you want? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule; For the Responsive, or the Word that answers the Question, does not depend upon the Interrogative, but upon the Verb, or some other Word joined with it; which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the Answer; thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam?* Pater [*dedit mihi pecuniam.*] *Quo cares?* [*Carco*] libro.

NUM. 1. NOTE, 1. That *Of* or *'s* is the ordinary Sign of this Genitive. NOTE, 2. That the Relative Pronouns, *ejus*, *illius*, *cujus*, &c. Englished, *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, *thereof*, *whereof*, *whose*, have their Substantives generally understood; as, *Libri ejus*, [*supple* *Hominis*, *Familiae*, &c.] *His Book* or *her Book*. *Libri eorum*, [*supple* *hominum*, *seminarum*, &c.] *Their Books*.

beat Adjectivum laudis vel vituperii, in Genitivo vel Ablativo poni potest; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Vir <sup>b</sup> summa <sup>b</sup> prudentia,  
vel <sup>b</sup> summa <sup>b</sup> prudentia.

<sup>a</sup> Puer <sup>b</sup> proba <sup>b</sup> indolis,  
vel <sup>b</sup> proba <sup>b</sup> indole.

13 \* 2. Adjectivum in neutro genere absque Substantivo regit Genitivum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Multum <sup>b</sup> pecunia.

<sup>a</sup> Quid <sup>b</sup> rei?

or Dispraise joined with it, may be put in the Genitive Ablative; as,

A Man of great Wisdom

A Boy of a good Disposition.

2. An Adjective in the Neuter Gender without a Substantive governs the Genitive; as,

Much Money.

What is the Matter?

## § 2. Adjectivorum.

### REG. I.

14 \* ADJECTIVA verbalia vel affectivum animi significantia Genitivum postulant; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Avidus <sup>b</sup> gloria.

<sup>a</sup> Ignarus <sup>b</sup> fraudis.

<sup>a</sup> Memor <sup>b</sup> beneficiorum.

## § 2. Of Adjectives.

### RULE I.

VERBAL Adjectives, such as signify an Affect of the Mind require the Genitive; as,

Desirous of Glory.

Ignorant of Fraud.

Mindful of Favours.

### REG.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia; Quare?*

Note, 1. That these Adjectives which thus govern the Genitive, they were Substantives, are generally such as signify Quantity; as, *Multum, quantum, plus, plurimum.*

Note, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the Genitive, and upon Account are by many thought real Substantives.

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. Adjectives of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambiciosus, avarus, studiosus, curiosus.*

2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, prudus, doctus, docilis, praeceps, praeceps, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, consultus, &c.*

3. OF IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, rudis, imperitus, nescius, incertus, dubius, aversus, sollicitus, immemor.*

4. OF GUILT; as, *Consciens, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus.*

5. Verbals in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, peccax: And Amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, sitiens, negligens,*

6. To which may be referred, *Emulus, invidiosus, parcus, prodigus, fufus, securus.*



# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 81

## REG. II.

**PARTITIVA** & partitive posita, Comparativa, Superlativa, Interrogativa & quædam Numeralia Genitivo plurali præcedunt; ut,

*Aliquis* <sup>b</sup> *Philosophorum.*

*Senior* <sup>b</sup> *fratrum.*

*Doctissimus* <sup>b</sup> *Romanorum.*

*Quis* <sup>b</sup> *nostrum?*

*Una* <sup>b</sup> *Musarum.*

*Octavus* <sup>b</sup> *sapientum.*

## REG. III.

**ADJECTIVA** significabilia commodum vel incommodum, similitudinem & dissimilitudinem, re præcedunt; ut,

*Utilis* <sup>b</sup> *bello.*

*Perniciosus* <sup>b</sup> *Reipublicæ.*

*Similis* <sup>b</sup> *patri.*

## RULE II.

**PARTITIVES** and Words plac'd partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives and some Numerals govern the Genitive plural; as,

Someone of the Philosophers.

The elder of the Brothers.

The most learned of the Romans.

Which of us? [mans.]

One of the Muses.

The Eighth of the wise Men.

## RULE III.

**ADJECTIVES** signifying Profit or Disprofit, Likeness or Unlikeness, govern the Dative; as,

Profitable for War.

Pernicious to the Commonwealth.

Like his Father. (wealth.)

F Ver-

15. NOTE, 1. That 'tis easy to know when this Rule takes place, when the Genitive into Inter with the Accus. or *de*, *e*, *ex*, with the Accus. *Optimus Regum*, The best of Kings, i. e. *Optimus inter Reges*, or *ex Regibus*.

2. That when there are two Substantives of different Genders, the first, &c. rather agrees with the first than the last; as, *Indus fluminum*, Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus*, Plin. Otherwise it is of the same Gender with the Substantive it governs; as, *Pauca animalium*. *Unaquaque* *rum*.

3. That Partitives, &c. take the Genitive singular of Collective Nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in Gender; as, *Præstantissima civitatis*, Cic. *Nympharum sanguinis una*, Virg.

16. NOTE, 1. That some of these Adjectives govern also the Genitive; as, *Amicus*, *inimicus*, *socius*, *vicinus*, *par*, *aqualis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *proprius*, *communis*, &c.

2. That Adjectives signifying Motion or Tendency to a Thing, agree rather the Accusative with AD, than the Dative; such as, *Proclivus*, *propensus*, *velox*, *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, &c. as, *Est piger ad pœnas Princeps*, *ad præmia velox*, Ovid.

3. That Adjectives signifying Fitness, or the contrary, may have the Accusative; as, *Aptus*, *inertus bello*, or *ad bellum*.

## 82 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

- 17 ¶ Verbalia in **BILIS** &  
**DUS** regunt Dativum; ut,  
a *Amandus* vel a *amabi-*  
*lis* b *omnibus*.

### REG. IV.

- 18\* **ADJECTIVA** dimen-  
sionem significancia  
regunt Accusativum men-  
suræ; ut,

*Columna sexaginta* b *pe-*  
*des* a *alta*.

### REG. V.

- 19\* **COMPARATIVUS**  
regit Ablativum, qui  
resolvitur per **QUAM**; ut,  
a *Dulcior* b *melle*.  
a *Præstantior* b *auro*.

### REG. VI.

- 20\* **DIGNUS**, *Indignus*,  
*Contentus*, *Præditus*,  
*Captus* & *Fretus*: Item *Nat-*  
*us*, *Satus*, *Ortus*, *Editus*,

*Verbals* in **BILIS** and **DUS**  
govern the Dative; as,  
To be beloved of all Me

### RULE IV.

**ADJECTIVES** signify-  
Dimension govern the  
casative of Measure; as,

A Pillar sixty Foot high

### RULE V.

**THE** Comparative Deg  
governs the Ablative, n  
is resolved by **Quam**; as,  
Sweeter than Honey.  
Better than Gold.

### RULE VI.

**THESE** Adjectives,  
gnus, Indignus, Com  
tus, Præditus, Captus  
Fretus: Also Natus, Sa

Num. 17. OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this Dative.

Note, That Participles of the Preter Tense, and Passive Verbs also, especially among the Poets, have frequently the Dative, instead of the Ablative with A or AB; as, *Nullus eorum mihi visus est*, None of them was seen by me; *Non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any.

Num. 18. The Adjectives of DIMENSION are, *Altus*, high or crassus, or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The Names of MEASURE are, *Digitus*, an Inch; *palmus*, an Handbreadth; *pes*, a Foot; *Cubitus*, a Cubit; *ulna*, an Ell; *passus*, a Pace, &c.

Note, 1. That Verbs signifying Dimension likewise have the Accusative of Measure; as, *Patet tres ulnas*, It is three Ells large, *Virg.*

Note, 2. That sometimes the Word of Measure is put in the Ablative; as, *Fossa sex cubitis alta*, *dudodum lata*, *Liv. Venter ejus extat sesquipedal.* And sometimes but rarely in the Genitive; as, *Nec longiores annu pedum*, *Plin.*

Num. 19. Let the following Examples be observed and imitated: *melior*; Much better. *Nihil pejor*; Nothing worse. *Major solito*; Greater than usual. *Quo diligentior es, eo doctior evades*; The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto superbius, tanto vilior*; The more proud, the less worth. *Nihil Virgilio doctius*; There is none more learned than Virgil.

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 83

similia, Ablativum pe-

ant; ut, *a Dignus b honore.*

*a Præditus b virtute.*

*a Contentus b parvo.*

*a Captus b oculis.*

*a Fretus b viribus.*

*a Ortus b regibus.*

## REG. VII.

**DJECTIVUM** copiarum aut inopiarum regit Genitivum vel Ablativum; ut,

*a Plenus b ira vel b ira.*

*a Inops b rationis.*

## REGIMEN Verborum.

### § 1. Personalium.

#### REG. I.

**SUM** quoties possessio nem, proprietatem aut eum significat, regit Genitivum; ut,

*Est b Regis punire rebelles.*

*Inspiciens a est dicere, non putavam.*

*Militum a est suo duci parere.*

**Excipiuntur** hi Nominativi, *Meum, tuum,*

*Ortus, Editus, and the like, require the Ablative; as,*

*Worthy of Honour.*

*Endued with Virtue.*

*Content with little.*

*Blind.*

*Trusting to his Strength.*

*Descended of Kings.*

## RULE VII.

**AN ADJECTIVE** of Plenty or Want governs the Genitive or Ablative; as, *Full of Anger.*  
*Void of Reason.*

## II. The Government of Verbs.

### § 1. Of Personal Verbs.

#### RULE I.

**SUM**, when it signifies Possession, Property or Duty, governs the Genitive; as,

*It belongs to the King to punish Rebels.*

*It is the Property of a Fool to say, I had not thought.*

*It is the Duty of Soldiers to obey their General.*

*¶ These Nominatives, Me-23*  
*um, tuum, suum, nostrum, ve-*

F 2

*suum,*

*Num. 21. NOTE, 1. That Discontentus, gravidus, refectus; and orbis, vagus; choose rather the Ablative: Indigus, compos and impos the Genitive.*

*NOTE, 2. That some comprehend Opus and Usus, when they signify Necessity, under this Rule; as, Quid opus est verbis? What Need is there of words? Ovid. Nunc viribus usus, Now there is Need of Strength, Virg. But to be remarked that these are Substantive Nouns, the very same with Opus, Opus, a Work, and Usus, usus, Use; and have the Ablative after them, beside the Preposition IN, which is understood. Sometimes Opus hath the Nominative by Num. 3. as, Dux nobis opus est, We stand in need of a Leader. elegantly joined with the Participle Perfect; as, Consulto, maturato, inchoo, facio, &c. opus est; We must advise, make haste, and out, do, &c.*

# 84 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

*suum, nostrum, vestrum; ut,*  
*b Tuum<sup>a</sup> est id procurare.*

## R E G. II.

- 24 \* **MISEREOR**, *miserescō & satago regunt Genitivum; ut,*  
*<sup>a</sup> Miserere<sup>b</sup> civium tuorum.*

*<sup>a</sup> Satagit<sup>b</sup> rerum suarum.*

## R E G. III.

- 25 **EST** *pro habeo regit Dativum personæ; ut,*  
*<sup>a</sup> Est<sup>b</sup> mihi liber.*  
*<sup>a</sup> Sunt<sup>b</sup> mihi libri.*

## R E G. IV.

- 26 **SUM** *pro affero regit duos Dativos, unum personæ, alterum rei; ut,*  
*<sup>a</sup> Est mihi<sup>b</sup> voluptati.*

## R E G. V.

- 27 **VERBUM** *significans commodum vel incommodum regit Dativum; ut,*  
*Fortuna<sup>a</sup> favet<sup>b</sup> fortibus.*  
*<sup>b</sup> Nemini<sup>a</sup> noceas.*

*strum, are excepted; as,*  
*It is your duty to manage the*

## R U L E II.

**MISEREOR**, *miserescō, & satago govern the Genitive; as,*  
*Take pity on your Countrymen.*

*He hath his Hands full*

## R U L E III.

**EST** *taken for habeo have] governs the Dative of a Person; as,*  
*I have a Book.*  
*I have Books.*

## R U L E IV.

**SUM** *taken for affero bring] governs two Datives the one of a Person, and the other of a Thing; as,*  
*It is a Pleasure to me.*

## R U L E V.

**A** *Verb signifying Advantage or Disadvantage governs the Dative; as,*  
*Fortune favours the brave.*  
*Do hurt to no Man.*

*Num. 23. To these last may be added Possessive Nouns, such as, Regnum humanum, bellum, and the like; as, Humanum est errare, It is incumbent on Man to err.*

*Note, That to all these are understood Officium, opus, negotium, or other Words to be gathered from the Sentence; as, Me Pompeii tolusci, You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's Interest, Civis amicum, fautorum, or the like.*

*Num. 25. This is more elegant than, Habeo librum, or habeo libros. So Desum is used elegantly for Careo; as, Desunt mihi libri, for Careo, I want Books.*

*Num. 26. Note, That other Verbs, such as, Do, duco, verto, tribuo, &c. may have two Datives; as, Hoc tibi laudi datur, are praised for this. Ne mihi vitio vertas, Do not blame me.*

*To this may be referred such Expressions as these, Est mihi nomen Joannis, My Name is John; Which is more elegant than, Est mihi nomen Joannis, or Joannis.*

*Num. 27. This is a very general Rule, and (when we signify a thing*

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 85

## R E G. VI.

VERBUM activè significans regit Accusativum; ut,

*Ama b Deum.*

*Reverere b parentes.*

*Recordor, memini, remissor & obliviscor regunt Activum vel Genitivum;*

*Recordor b lectionis vel b lectionem.*

*Oliviscor b injuriæ vel b injuriam.*

## R U L E VI.

VERB significans activè governs the Accusative ;

as,

*Love God.*

*Reverence your Parents.*

*Recordor, memini, remissor and obliviscor govern the Accusative or Genitive ;*

as,

*I remember my Lesson.*

*I forget an Injury.*

F 3

V E R.

quired to any Person or Thing) almost common to all Verbs. But in a particular manner are comprehended under it,

1. To PROFIT or HURT ; as, *Commodo, proficio, placeo, consulo, noceo, officio.* But *Lado* and *offendo* govern the Accus.

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their contraries ; as, *Faveo, anno, arrideo, assentior, adstipulor, gratulor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudor, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, studeo, supplico, &c.* Also *Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor* : Also *Derogo, detraho, invideo, &c.* But *Juvo* has the Accus.

3. To COMMAND, OBEY, or RESIST ; as, *Impero, praecepio, mando* : *Pareo, servio, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem gero, morigeror, famulor* : *Pugno, repugno, certo, obsto, reluctor, venitor, resisto, adversor, refragor, &c.* But *Jubeo* governs the Accus.

4. To THREATEN or be ANGRY with ; as, *Minor, indignor, irascor, succenseo.*

5. To TRUST ; as, *Fido, confido, credo.*

Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE and MALE ; *Satisfacio, benedico, malefacio, maledico.*

The Compounds of the Verb SUM ; *sum, posum, obsum.*

Verbs compounded with these ten PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, contra, ob, post, pra, sub* and *super* ; as, 1. *Adsto, accumbo, acquiesco, asubareo, admoveo.* 2. *Antecello, anteeo, anteverto.* 3. *Consono, sceo, condono, commorior.* 4. *Illudo, immorior, inhareo, insideo, inmitor, invigilo, incumbo.* 5. *Interpono, intervenio, intersero.* 6. *Obtreffo, occumbo.* 7. *Postpono, posthabeo.* 8. *Praeo, praestat for ex-praluceo.* 9. *Succedo, submitto, subscio.* 10. *Supersto, supervenio.*

11. That TO, the Sign of the Dative, is frequently understood. 12. That TO is not always a Sign of the Dative, for 1. Verbs of Motion ; as, *Eo, venio, proficiscor* : And 2. These Verbs, *Provoco, invito, hortor, specto, pertineo, attineo*, and such like, have the Accusative with the Preposition *ad*.

13. Note, That Neuter and Intransitive Verbs have sometimes an active after them. 1. Of their own or the like Signification ; as, *Vivere, Gaudere gaudium, Sitiſſe sanguinem, Olerere hircum.* 2. When taken a Metaphorical Sense ; as, *Ardebat Alexin, i. e. Vehementer amabat.*



# 86 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

VERBA Activa alium una cum Accusativo casum regentia.

30 \* 1. VERBA accusandi, damnandi & absolvendi, cum Accusativo personæ regunt etiam Genitivum criminis; ut,

\* Arguit <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> furti.

<sup>b</sup> Meipsum <sup>bb</sup> inertia <sup>a</sup> condemnno.

<sup>b</sup> Illum <sup>bb</sup> homicidii <sup>a</sup> absolvunt.

31 2. Verba comparandi, dandi, narrandi & auferendi, regunt Dativum cum Accusativo; ut,

Active VERBS governing another Case together with the Accusative.

1. VERBS of Accusing, Condemning and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person govern also the Genitive of the Crime; as,

He accuses me of Theft.

I condemn my self of Laziness.

They acquit him of Murder,

2. VERBS of Comparing, Giving, Declaring and Taking away, govern the Dative with the Accusative; as,

\* Comparo

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, Accuso, ago, appello, arguo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, infumulo, postulo, &c.

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, Damno, condemnno, convinco, &c.

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, Solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo, &c.

NOTE, 1. That the Genitive may be changed into the Ablative, either with, or without a Preposition; as, Pargo te hac culpa, or de hac culpa, clear you of this Fault. Eum de vi condemnnavit; He found him guilty of a Riot, &c.

NOTE, 2. That the Genitive, properly speaking, is governed by some Ablative understood, such as, Crimine, pena, actione, causa; as, Accuso furti, i. e. crimine furti. Condemnare capitis, i. e. pena capitis.

NOTE, 3. That Crimine, pena, actione, capite, morte, scarcely admit of a Preposition.

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong also Verbs of Preceding or postponing.

2. To Verbs of GIVING belong Verbs of Receiving, promising, paying, sending, bringing.

3. To Verbs of DECLARING belong Verbs of Explaining, shewing, saying, &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING away are, Aufero, abimo, eripio, eximo, deſurripio, detrabo, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, arſendo, &c.

NOTE, 1. That many of these Verbs govern the Dative by Num. 27.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the Dative with the Accusative, when together with the thing done is also signified the Person to, or for whom it is done; as, Doce mihi filium, Teach me my Son. Cura mihi hanc rem, Take care of this Affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That Comparo, confero, compono, have frequently the Ablative with cum.

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 87

<sup>a</sup> Comparo <sup>b</sup> Virgilium <sup>bb</sup> Ho-  
mero.

<sup>b</sup> Suum <sup>bb</sup> cuique <sup>a</sup> tribuito.

<sup>a</sup> Narras <sup>b</sup> fabulam <sup>bb</sup> sur-  
do.

<sup>a</sup> Eripuit <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> morti.

\* 3. VERBA rogandi &  
docendi duos admittunt Ac-  
cusativos, priorem personæ,  
posterio rem rei; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Posce <sup>b</sup> Deum <sup>bb</sup> veniam.

<sup>a</sup> Docuit <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> Grammaticam.

I compare Virgil to Ho-  
mer.

Give every Man his own.  
You tell a Story to a  
deaf Man.

He rescued me from Death.

3. VERBS of Asking and 32  
Teaching admit of two Accu-  
satives, the first of a Person,  
and the second of a thing; as,  
Beg Pardon of God.

He taught me Grammar.

## ANNO TATIO.

\* Quorum Activa duos  
Casus regunt, eorum Pas-  
siva posteriorem retinent;  
ut,

<sup>a</sup> Accusor <sup>b</sup> furti.

Virgilius <sup>a</sup> comparatur <sup>b</sup> Ho-  
mero.

<sup>a</sup> Doceor <sup>b</sup> Grammaticam.

## R E G. VII.

PRETIUM rei à quovis  
Verbo in Ablativo re-  
gitur; ut,

The Passives of such A-33  
itive Verbs as govern two  
Cases, do still retain the last  
of them; as,

I am accused of Theft.

Virgil is compared to  
Homer.

I am taught Grammar.

## R U L E VII.

THE Price of a Thing is 34  
governed in the Abla-  
tive by any Verb; as,

F 4

<sup>a</sup> Emi

Num. 32. NOTE, 1. That among the Verbs that govern two Accusatives  
are also reckoned these following;

1. CELO; as, Celo hanc rem uxorem, Conceal this from your Wife,  
Plant. But we can say also, Celo te de hac re, and Celotibi hanc rem.

2. Verbs of CLOATHING; as, Induit se calceos, He put on his Shoes.  
But these have more commonly the Ablative of the thing without a Preposi-  
tion; as, Vestit se purpura, He cloaths himself with Purple. Induo and  
Exuo have frequently the Person in the Dative, and the thing in the Accu-  
sative; as, Thoracem sibi induit, He put on his Breast-plate.

3. MONEO; as, Id unum te moneo, I put you in mind of this one thing  
But, unless it is some general Word, [as, Hoc, illud, id, &c.] Moneo, ad-  
moneo, commonefacio, have either the Genitive; as, Admoneo te officii, I  
put you in mind of your Duty: Or the Ablative with de; as, De hac re te  
sapius admonui, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE, 2. That Verbs of Asking often change the Accusative of the Per-  
son into an Ablative with the Preposition; as, Oro, exoro, peto, posulo hoc a  
te; I intreat this of you: Some always; as, Contendo, quero, scitor, sciscitor  
hoc à te. Finally, some have the Accusative of the Person, and the Ablative  
of the thing with de; as, Interrogo, consulo, percontor te de hac re.

# 88 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

<sup>a</sup> *Emi librum* <sup>b</sup> *duobus assibus.*

<sup>a</sup> *Vendidit hic* <sup>b</sup> *auropatriam.*  
*Demosthenes* <sup>a</sup> *dūcuis* <sup>b</sup> *ta.*  
*lento.*

35 \* *Excipiuntur hi Genitivi, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris; ut,*

<sup>b</sup> *Quanti* <sup>a</sup> *constitit?*

*Assē* <sup>b</sup> *pluris.*

36 \* *VERBA æstimandi regunt hujusmodi Genitivos, Magni, parvi, nihili, &c. ut,*

<sup>a</sup> *Æstimo te* <sup>b</sup> *magni.*

*R E G. VIII.*

37 \* *VERBA copię & inopię plerumque Ablativum regunt; ut,*

<sup>a</sup> *Abundat* <sup>b</sup> *divitiis.*

<sup>a</sup> *Caret omni* <sup>b</sup> *culpā.*

38 \* *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, regunt Ablativum; ut,*

<sup>a</sup> *Utiur* <sup>b</sup> *fraude.*

<sup>a</sup> *Abutitur* <sup>b</sup> *libris.*

I bought a Book for two Shillings. [for Gold.

This Man sold his Country Demosthenes taught for a Talent.

These Genitives, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, are excepted; as,

How much cost it?

A Shilling and more.

VERBS of valuing govern such Genitives as these, Magni, parvi, nihili, &c. as,

I value you much.

*R U L E VIII.*

VERBS of Plenty and Scarceness for the most part govern the Ablative; as,

He abounds in Riches.

He has no Fault.

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor; govern the Ablative; as,

He uses Deceit.

He abuses Books.

§ 2. Re-

Num. 35. Note, That if the Substantive be expressed, they are put in the Ablative; as, *Quanto pretio?* *Minore mercede.*

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of Valuing are, *Æstimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo.*

2. The rest of the Genitives are, *Minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nanci, flocci, pili, assis, ternucii, hujus: Alfo* *Equi* and *bovi* after *facio* and *consulo.*

NOTE, 1. That we say also, *Æstimo magno, parvo,* supple *pretio.*

NOTE, 2. That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting Authority. But there is an Example of it to be found in *Phadrus II. 5. 25.*

*Multo majoris alapa mecum veniunt.*

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the Genitive; as, *Eget aris,* He wants Money, *Hor. Implentur veteris Bacchi,* They are filled with old Wine, *Virg.*

NOTE, That Verbs of Loading and Unloading, and the like, belong to this Rule; as, *Navis operatur mercibus,* The Ship is loaded with Goods. *Levabo te hoc onere,* I will ease you of this Burden. *Liberavit nos metum,* He delivered us from Fear.

Num. 38. To these Verbs add *Nitor, gaudet, muto, dono, munero, com-*

P

§ 2. Reg per

VERI reg

\* Exp

\* Lic

\* EX

Interess

tant: u

\* Ref

\* Inte

\* At

fra, v

Accusa

Non

\* EX

que, M

det, tæ

Accusa

Geniti

\* Mi

\* Pa

\* Ta

\* EX

tuor, I

oportet

vum p

vo; ut

munico,

prosequor

NOTE

To get

Num.

bet, libet

sufficit, &

ter them

Num.

tive s as

the follo

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 89

## 2. Regimen Verborum Impersonalium.

### REG. IX.

VERBUM Impersonale regit Dativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Expedi<sup>b</sup> Reipublica.

<sup>a</sup> Licet<sup>b</sup> nemini peccare

\* EXCEP. 1. Refert & Interest Genitivum postulant; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Refert<sup>b</sup> patris.

<sup>a</sup> Interest<sup>b</sup> omnium.

\* At Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, ponuntur in Accusativo plurali; ut, Non<sup>b</sup> mea<sup>a</sup> refert.

\* EXCEP. 2. Hæc quinque, Miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet & piget regunt Accusativum personæ, cum Genitivo rei; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Miseret<sup>b</sup> me<sup>bb</sup> tui.

<sup>a</sup> Pœnitet<sup>b</sup> me<sup>bb</sup> peccati.

<sup>a</sup> Tædet<sup>b</sup> me<sup>bb</sup> vitæ.

\* EXCEP. 3. Hæc quatuor, Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet, regunt Accusativum personæ cum Infinitivo; ut,

## § 2. The Government of Impersonal Verbs.

### RULE IX.

*AN Impersonal Verb governs the Dative; as,*

*It is profitable for the State.*

*No Man is allowed to sin.*

*EXCEP. 1. Refert and Interest require the Genitive; as,*

*It concerns my Father.*

*It is the Interest of all.*

*But Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, are put in the Accusative Plural; as,*

*I am not concerned.*

*EXCEP. 2. These five, Misere-42 ret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, and piget, govern the Accusative of a Person with the Genitive of a Thing; as,*

*I pity you.*

*I repent of my Sin.*

*I am weary of my Life.*

*EXCEP. 3. These four, De-43 cet, delectat, juvat, oportet, govern the Accusative of the Person with the Infinitive; as,*

*a Dele-*

*munico, visito, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, afflicto, consto, prosequor, &c.*

NOTE, That Potior, sometimes governs the Genitive; as, Potiri hostium, To get his Enemies into his Power. Potiri rerum, To have the chief Rule.

NUM. 39. Such as these, Accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, libet, licet, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, præstat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit, &c. Together with the Dative they have commonly an Infinitive after them, which is supposed to supply the place of a Nominative before them.

NUM. 42. NOTE, That this Genitive is frequently turned into the Infinitive; as, Pœnitet me peccasse; Tædet me vivere; and so they fall in with the following Rule.

# 90 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

<sup>a</sup> Delectat <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> studere.  
Non <sup>a</sup> decet <sup>b</sup> te <sup>bb</sup> rixari.

§ 3. REGIMEN Infinitivi,  
Participiorum, Gerundiorum  
et Supinorum.

## REG. X.

44 UNUM Verbum regit  
aliud in Infinitivo; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Cupio <sup>b</sup> discere.

## REG. XI.

45 PARTICIPIA, Gerundia  
& Supina regunt Casum  
suorum verborum; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Amans <sup>b</sup> virtutem.  
<sup>a</sup> Carens <sup>b</sup> fraude.

### 1. GERUNDIA.

46 1. GERUNDIUM in  
DUM Nominativi  
Casus cum verbo [est] re-  
git Dativum; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Vivendum est <sup>b</sup> mihi recte.  
<sup>a</sup> Moriendum est <sup>b</sup> omnibus.

47 2. Gerundium in DI re-  
gitur à Substantivis vel  
Adjectivis; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Tempus <sup>b</sup> legendi.  
<sup>a</sup> Cupidus <sup>b</sup> discendi.

I delight to study.  
It does not become you to scold

§ 3. The GOVERNMENT  
of the Infinitive, Participles,  
Gerunds and Supines.

## RULE X.

ONE Verb governs another in  
the Infinitive; as,  
I desire to learn,

## RULE XI.

PARTICIPLES, Gerunds and  
Supines govern the Case of  
their own Verbs; as,  
Loving Virtue.  
Wanting Guile.

### GERUNDS.

1. THE GERUND in DUM  
of the Nominative Case  
with the Verb [est] governs the  
Dative; as,

I must live well.  
All must die.

2. The Gerund in DI is go-  
vernèd by Substantives or Ad-  
jectives; as,

Time of reading.  
Desirous to learn.

3. Ge-

Num. 43. Note, That Oportet is elegantly joined with the Subjunctive  
Mood, UT being understood; as, Oportet facias, (You must do it,) for O-  
portet te facere.

Attinet, Pertinet and Spectat, when used impersonally, (which rarely hap-  
pens) have the Accusative with ad, as was observed above, p. 85.

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by Adjectives; as, Cupidus et cupiens  
discere.

Note, That the Verb Caput or caperunt is sometimes understood; as,  
Omnes mihi invidere; supple caperunt, They all began to envy me.

Num. 46. This Dative is frequently understood; as, Eundem est, (supple  
nobis) We must go.

Note, That this Gerund always imports Necessity, and the Dative after  
it is the Person on whom the Necessity lies.

Num. 47. 1. The Substantives are such as these, Amor, causa, gratia,  
studium, tempus, occasio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido, &c.

2. The Adjectives are generally Verbals, mentioned Num. 14.



# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 91

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi Casus regitur ab Adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem significantibus; ut,  
*Charta utilis scribenda.*

4. Gerundium in D U M Accusativi Casus regitur à Præpositionibus ad vel inter; ut,

*Promptus ad audiendum.*

*Attentus inter docendum.*

5. Gerundium in DO Ablativi Casus regitur à Præpositionibus, a, ab, de, e, ex, vel in; ut,

*Pæna à peccando absterret.*

\* Vel sine Præpositione, ut Ablativus Modi vel Causæ; ut,

*Memoria excolendo augetur.*

*a Defessus sum ambulando.*

6. Gerundia Accusativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in Participia in D U S, quæ cum suis Substantivis in Genere, Numero & Casu concordant; ut,

*Petendum est pacem.*

*Tempus petendi pacem.*

3. The Gerund in DO of the Dative Case is governed by Adjectives signifying Usefulness or Fitness; as,

*Paper useful for writing.*

4. The Gerund in D U M of the Accusative Case is governed by the Prepositions ad or inter; as,

*Ready to hear.*

*Attentive in Time of teaching.*

5. The Gerund in DO of the Ablative Case is governed by the Prepositions, a, ab, de, e, ex, or in; as,

*Punishment frightens from sinning.*

\* Or without a Preposition, as the Ablative of Manner or Cause; as,

*The Memory is improved by exercising it.*

*I am wearied with walking.*

6. Gerunds governing the Accusative are elegantly turned into the Participles in D U S, which agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number and Case; as,

*Petenda est pax.*

*Tempus petendæ pacis.*

Ad

Num. 48. The Adjective of Fitness is often understood; as, *Non est solvendo*; He is not able to pay, [supple aptus or par.]

Note, That sometimes this Gerund is governed by a Verb; as, *Epidicum querendum speram dabo*, I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus, Plant.

Num. 49. Note, 1. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely, the Prepositions ob and ante; as, *Ob absolvendum munus*, For finishing your Task, Cic. *Ante domandum*; Before they are tamed or broken, Virg. speaking of Horses.

Note, 2. That what was the Gerund in Dum of the Nominative with the Verb esse, fuit, &c. becomes the Accusative with esse; as, *Omnibus moriendum esse novimus*; We know that all must die.

# 92 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Ad petendum pacem.  
A petendo pacem.

Ad petendam pacem.  
A petenda pace.

## SUPINA.

- 53 \* 1. Supinum in UM ponitur post verbum motus; ut,  
a Abiit b deambulatum.  
54 \* 2. Supinum in U ponitur post nomen Adjectivum; ut,  
a Facile b diffu.

## SUPINES.

1. The Supine in UM is put after a Verb of Motion; as,  
He hath gone to walk.  
2. The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun; as,  
Easy to tell, or to be told.

§ 4. Con.

Num. 52. Add to these the Gerunds of Fungor, fruor and petor. These Participles in DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.

NOTE, 1. That the Substantive must always be of the same Case that the Gerund was of.

NOTE 2. That because of its noisy Sound, the Gerund in di is seldom changed into the Genitive Plural; but either the Accusative is retained; as, Studio patres vestros videndi, rather than Patrum vestrorum videndorum; or it is turned into the Genitive Plural, without changing the Gerund; as, Patrum vestrorum videndi studio.

Num. 53. The Supine in UM is elegantly used with the Verb Eo, when we signify that one sets himself about the doing of a thing; as, In mea vita tu laudem is quaesitum? Are you going to advance your Reputation at the Hazard of my Life; Ter. And this is the Reason why this Supine, with iri taken impersonally, supplies the place of the Future of the Infinitive Passive.

## Some general Remarks on the Construction of Participles, Gerunds and Supines.

NOTE 1. That Participles, Gerunds and Supines have a twofold Construction; one as they partake of the Nature of Verbs, by which they govern a certain Case after them; another as they partake of the Nature of Nouns, and consequently are subject to the same Rules with them; Thus,

1. A Participle is always an Adjective agreeing with its Substantive, by Num. 1.

2. A Gerund is a Substantive, and construed as follows: (1.) That in dum of the Nominative by Num. 2. Of the Accus. by Num. 68. (2.) That in di by Num. 11, or 14. (3.) That in do of the Dat. by Num. 16. of the Ablat. by Num. 69, 71, or 55.

3. A Supine is also a Substantive, (1.) That in um, governed by ad understood, by Num. 68. (2.) That in u governed by in understood, by Num. 71.

NOTE 2. That the Present of the Infinitive Active, the first Supine and the Gerund in dum, with the Preposition ad, are thus distinguished: The Supine is used after Verbs of Motion; The Infinitive after any other Verbs; The Gerund in dum with ad after Adjective Nouns. But these last are frequently to be met with after Verbs of Motion; and Poets use also the Infinitive after Adjectives.

NOTE, 3. That the Present of the Infinitive Passive and the last Supine, are thus distinguished: The Supine hath always an Adjective before it; which the Infinitive hath not, unless among Poets.

# Part III: Chap. I. of Construction. 93

## § 4. Constructio CIRCUMSTANTIARUM.

1. Cause, Modus, & Instrumentum.

R E G. XII.

\* CAUSA, Modus & Instrumentum ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Palleo <sup>b</sup> metu.

<sup>a</sup> Fecit suo <sup>b</sup> more.

<sup>a</sup> Scribo <sup>b</sup> calamo.

2. Locus.

R E G. XIII.

\* 1. NOMEN oppidi ponitur in Ge-

## § 4. The Construction of Circumstances (a).

1. The Cause, Manner and Instrument.

R U L E XII.

THE Cause, Manner and Instrument are put in the Ablative; as,

I am pale for Fear.

He did it after his own way.

I write with a Pen.

2. Place.

R U L E XIII.

THE Name of a Town is put in the Genitive

nitivo

(a) *Adjective Nouns*, but especially *Verbs*, have frequently some CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Discourse; the most considerable whereof, with respect to Construction, are these Five. 1. The Cause or Reason why any thing is done. 2. The Way or Manner how it is done. 3. The Instrument or Thing wherewith it is done. 4. The Place where. And 5. The Time when it is done.

NUM. 55. NOTE, 1. That the CAUSE is known by the Question CUR, or QUARE? Why? Wherefore? &c. The MANNER by the Question QUOMODO? How? And the INSTRUMENT by the Question QUOCUM? Wherewith?

NOTE, 2. That the Preposition is frequently express'd with the Cause and Manner; as, *Pro gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culpam*, For a Fault. *Cum summo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecus* With Disgrace. But the Preposition [CUM] is never added to the Instrument: For we cannot say, *Scribo cum calamo*; *Cum oculis vidi*.

NOTE, 3. But here we must carefully distinguish between the Instrument, and what is called the *Ablative Comitatus*, or, Ablative of Concomitancy, i. e. signifying that something was in Company with another; for then the Preposition [CUM] is generally express'd; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio*, He entered with a Sword, i. e. having a Sword with him or about him.

NOTE, 4. That to Cause some refer the Matter of which any thing is made; as *Clypeus* *est fabricatus*, A Shield made of Brass: But (except with the Poets) the Preposition is for the most express'd.

NOTE, 5. That to Manner some refer the Adjunct, i. e. something joined to another thing; as, *Terra amena floribus*, A Land pleasant with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, A Hill white with Snow.

NOTE, 6. That to Instrument some refer *Conficior dolore*, *invidia*, &c. *Prosequor odio*, *amore*, &c. *Afficio te honore*, *contumelia*, &c. *Lacesso verbis a-* *gris*, &c.

# 94 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

nitive cum quæstio fit per  
UBI; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Vixit <sup>b</sup> Romæ.

<sup>a</sup> Mortuus est <sup>b</sup> Londini.

57 \* EXCEP. Si vero fit  
tertiæ Declinationis, aut  
Pluralis Numeri, in Ablati-  
vo effertur; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Habitat <sup>b</sup> Carthagine.

<sup>a</sup> Studuit <sup>b</sup> Parisiis.

58 \* 2 Cum quæstio fit per  
QUO, nomen oppidi in  
Accusativo regitur; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Venit <sup>b</sup> Edimburgum.

<sup>a</sup> Profectus est <sup>b</sup> Athenas.

59 \* 3. Si quærat per  
UNDE vel QUA, nomen  
oppidi ponitur in Ablati-  
vo; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Discessit <sup>b</sup> Aberdonia.

<sup>b</sup> Laodicea iter <sup>a</sup> faciebat.

60 \* 4. Domus & Rus eodem  
modo quo oppidorum no-  
mina construuntur; ut,

Manet domi, He stays at home. Domum revertitur, He  
returns home. Domo accersitus sum, I am called from  
home. Vivit rure or ruri. Abiit rus. Rediit rure.

61 5. Nominibus regionum,  
provinciarum, & aliorum  
locorum, non dictis, Præ-  
positio ferè additur; ut,

UBI? Natus in Scotia, in Fisa, in urbe, &c.

QUO? Abiit in Scotiam, in Fisam, in [vel ad] urbem, &c.

UNDE? Rediit è Scotia, è Fisa, ex urbe, &c.

QUA? Transiit per Scotiam, per Fisam, per urbem, &c.

ANNO.

when the Question is made by  
UBI, [Where,] as,

He lived at Rome.

He died at London.

EXCEP. But if it is of the  
third Declension, or of the Plu-  
ral Number, it is express in the  
Ablative; as,

He dwells at Carthage.

He studied at Paris.

2. When the Question is  
made by QUO, [Whither,]  
the Name of a Town is govern-  
ed in the Accusative; as,

He came to Edinburgh.

He went to Athens.

3. If the Question is made by  
UNDE, [Whence,] or QUA,  
[by, or through what Place,]  
the Name of a Town is put in  
the Ablative; as,

He went from Aberdeen.

He went through Laodicea.

4. Domus and Rus are con-  
strued the same Way as Names  
of Towns; as,

Manet domi, He stays at home. Domum revertitur, He  
returns home. Domo accersitus sum, I am called from  
home. Vivit rure or ruri. Abiit rus. Rediit rure.

5. To Names of Countries,  
Provinces, and other Places, not  
mentioned, the Preposition is  
generally added; as,

UBI? Natus in Scotia, in Fisa, in urbe, &c.

QUO? Abiit in Scotiam, in Fisam, in [vel ad] urbem, &c.

UNDE? Rediit è Scotia, è Fisa, ex urbe, &c.

QUA? Transiit per Scotiam, per Fisam, per urbem, &c.

ANNO.

Num. 56. See, NOTE, 1. That the Preposition is frequently added to  
Names of Towns (especially when the Question is Quo? Unde? or Qua?)  
and sometimes omitted to Names of Countries, Provinces, &c.

ANNOTATIO.

\* *Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accusativo, interdum & in Ablativo;*

*The Distance of one Place from another is put in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,*

*Glasgow a distat Edimburgo triginta<sup>b</sup> millia passuum. b iter vel<sup>b</sup> itinere unius diei.*

*Glasgow is thirty Miles distant from Edinburgh. One Day's Journey.*

3. Tempus.

3. Time.

R E G. XIV.

R U L E XIV.

1. **TEMPUS** ponitur in Ablativo cum quæstio sit per **QUANDO**;

1. **TIME** is put in the Ablative, when the Question is made by **QUANDO**, [When;] as,

*a Venit b hora tertia.*

*He came at three a Clock.*

\* 2. Cum quæstio sit per **QUAMDIU**, tempus ponitur in Accusativo vel Ablativo, sed sæpius Accusativo; ut,

2. *When the Question is made by QUAMDIU* [How long,] *Time is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but oftener in the Accusative; as,*

*a Mansit paucos b dies.*

*He staid a few Days.*

*Sex b mensibus a absuit.*

*He was away six Months.*

De

NOTE, 1. That *Humi*, *Militia* and *Belli* are also used in the Genitive when the Question is made by *Ubi*; as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militique una fuimus*, We were together both at home and abroad, or in Peace and War, *Ter. Belli domique agitantur*, Was managed both in Peace and War, *Sallust.*

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, it is understood, and therefore we cannot say, *Natus est Roma urbis nobilis*, but *urbe nobili*.

¶ These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus express,

The Name of a Town after { IN or AT TO or UNTO FROM or THROUGH } is put in the { Genit. or Abl. f Accusative, Ablative.

i. e. When it is of the third Declens. or of the Plur. Number. But when it signifies about or near a Place, we make use of the Preposition *ad*; as, *Caesar quod ad Troiam gesserat*, *Virg.*

Num. 63 and 64. These two Rules may be thus express;

1. Nouns that denote a precise TERM of TIME, are put in the Ablative:

2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of Time, are put in the Accusative or Ablative.



94 *Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,*

nitivo cum quæstio fit per  
UBI; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Vixit <sup>b</sup> Roma.

<sup>a</sup> Mortuus est <sup>b</sup> Londini.

57 \* EXCEP. Si vero sit  
tertiæ Declinationis, aut  
Pluralis Numeri, in Ablati-  
vo effertur; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Habitat <sup>b</sup> Carthagine.

<sup>a</sup> Studuit <sup>b</sup> Parisiis.

58 \* 2 Cum quæstio fit per  
QUO, nomen oppidi in  
Accusativo regitur; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Venit <sup>b</sup> Edinburgum.

<sup>a</sup> Profectus est <sup>b</sup> Athenas.

59 \* 3. Si quærat per  
UNDE vel QUA, nomen  
oppidi ponitur in Ablati-  
vo; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Discessit <sup>b</sup> Aberdonia.

<sup>b</sup> Laodicea iter <sup>a</sup> faciebat.

60 \* 4. Domus & Rus eodem  
modo quo oppidorum no-  
mina construuntur; ut,

Manet domi, He stays at home. Domum revertitur, He  
returns home. Domo accersitus sum, I am called from  
home. Vivit rure or ruri. Abiit rus. Rediit rure.

61 5. Nominibus regionum,  
provinciarum, & aliorum  
locorum, non dictis, Præ-  
positio ferè additur; ut,

UBI? Natus in Scotia, in Fisa, in urbe, &c.

QUO? Abiit in Scotiam, in Fisam, in [vel ad] urbem, &c.

UNDE? Rediit è Scotia, è Fisa, ex urbe, &c.

QUA? Transiit per Scotiam, per Fisam, per urbem, &c.

ANNO.

when the Question is made by  
UBI, [Where,] as,

He lived at Rome.

He died at London.

EXCEP. But if it is of the  
third Declension, or of the Plu-  
ral Number, it is express in the  
Ablative; as,

He dwells at Carthage.

He studied at Paris.

2. When the Question is  
made by QUO, [Whither,]  
the Name of a Town is govern-  
ed in the Accusative; as,

He came to Edinburgh.

He went to Athens.

3. If the Question is made by  
UNDE, [Whence,] or QUA,  
[by, or through what Place,]  
the Name of a Town is put in  
the Ablative; as,

He went from Aberdeen.

He went through Laodicea.

4. Domus and Rus are con-  
strued the same Way as Names  
of Towns; as,

5. To Names of Countries,  
Provinces, and other Places, not  
mentioned, the Preposition is  
generally added; as,

Num. 56. See. Note, 1. That the Preposition is frequently added to  
Names of Towns (especially when the Question is Quo? Unde? or Qua?)  
and sometimes omitted to Names of Countries, Provinces, &c.

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 95

## ANNOTATIO.

\* *Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accusativo, interdum & in Ablativo;*

*The Distance of one Place from another is put in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,*

*Glasgova distat Edimburgo triginta<sup>b</sup> millia passuum: b iter vel<sup>b</sup> itinere unius diei.*

*Glasgow is thirty Miles distant from Edinburgh. One Day's Journey.*

### 3. Tempus.

#### R E G. XIV.

1. **TEMPUS** ponitur in Ablativo cum quaestio fit per **QUANDO**;

### 3. Time.

#### R U L E XIV.

1. **TIME** is put in the Ablative, when the Question is made by **QUANDO**, [When;] as,

*a Venit b hora tertia.*

*He came at three a Clock.*

\* 2. Cum quaestio fit per **QUAMDIU**, tempus ponitur in Accusativo vel Ablativo, sed saepius Accusativo; ut,

2. When the Question is made by **QUAMDIU**, [How long.] Time is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but oftener in the Accusative; as,

*a Mansit paucos b dies.*

*He staid a few Days.*

*Sex b mensibus a absuit.*

*He was away six Months.*

De

NOTE, 1. That *Humi*, *Militia* and *Belli* are also used in the Genitive when the Question is made by *Ubi* & as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militiaque una fuimus*, We were together both at home and abroad, or in Peace and War. *Ter. Belli domique agitabatur*, Was managed both in Peace and War. *Sallust.*

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, it is understood, and therefore we cannot say, *Natus est Roma urbis nobis*, but *urbe nobili*.

¶ These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus expressd,

The Name of a Town after { **IN** or **AT** } is put { *Genit. or Abl. &*  
 { **TO** or **UNTO** } in the { *Accusative.*  
 { **FROM** or **THROUGH** } { *Ablative.*

† i. e. When it is of the third Declens. or of the Plur. Number. But when it signifies about or near a Place, we make use of the Preposition *ad*; as, *bellum quod ad Troiam gesserat*, Virg.

Now, 63 and 64. These two Rules may be thus expressd;

1. Nouns that denote a precise **TERM** of **TIME**, are put in the *Ablative*.  
2. Nouns that denote **CONTINUANCE** of Time, are put in the *Accusative* or *Ablative*.

# 96 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

De Ablativo absoluto.

R E G. XV.

\* **SUBSTANTIVUM**  
cum Participio, quo-  
rum Casus à nulla alia di-  
ctione pender, ponuntur in  
Ablativo absoluto; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Sole <sup>b</sup> oriente fugiunt  
tenebra.

<sup>a</sup> Opere <sup>b</sup> peracto ludemus.

III. Constructio Vocum  
Indeclinabilium.

1. Adverbiorum.

\* 1. **ADVERBIA** quæ-  
dam temporis,

Of the Ablative Absolute.

R U L E XV.

**A SUBSTANTIVE** with abso-  
lute Participle, whose Case de-  
pends upon no other Word, are  
put in the Ablative absolute;  
as,

The Sun rising [or while  
the Sun riseth] Darkness  
flees away.

Our Work being finished  
[or when our Work is  
finished] we will play.

III. The Construction of Words  
Indeclinable.

1. Of Adverbs.

1. **SOME** Adverbs of6  
Time, Place and  
loci

Num. 65. NOTE, 1. This Ablative is called ABSOLUTE or Inde-  
pendent because it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the  
Substantive (which is principally to be regarded) hath a Word before, that  
should govern it, or a Verb coming after, to which it should be a Nominative  
then the Rule does not take place.

NOTE, 2. That Having, Being, or a Word ending in ing, are the ordi-  
nary Signs of this Ablative.

NOTE, 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true Substantive) when  
Participle perfect is Englished by HAVING, we are carefully to advert whe-  
ther it is Passive or Dependent. If it is Passive, we are to change it into BE-  
ING, its true English. If it is Dependent, there needs no Change, for HA-  
VING is the proper English of it. The Use of this Note will appear by the  
following Example.

James having said these things, } *Jacobus hæc locutus abiit.* Dep.

James, these things being said, } *Jacobus his dictis abiit.* Pass.

Having promised a great Reward. } *Pollicitus magnam mercedem.* De-  
A great Reward being promised. } *Magnâ mercede promissâ.* Pass.

NOTE, 4. That when there is no Participle express in Latin, existente [be-  
ing] is understood; as, *Me puero*, I being a Boy. *Saturno Rege*, Saturn be-  
ing King. *Civitate nondum liberâ*, The State not being yet free.

NOTE, 5. That the Participle may be resolved into  *dum, cum, quando*  
*scilicet, postquam, &c.* [While, seeing, when, if, after] with the Verb; either  
in English or Latin.

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 97

loci & quantitatis regunt Genitivum; ut,

\* *Pridie illius* <sup>b</sup> *diei.*

\* *Ubique* <sup>b</sup> *gentium.*

\* *Satis est* <sup>b</sup> *verborum.*

\* 2. Quædam Adverbia derivata regunt Casum primitivorum; ut,

<sup>b</sup> *Omnium* <sup>a</sup> *elegantissime loquitur.*

*Vivere* <sup>a</sup> *convenienter* <sup>b</sup> *natura.*

2. *Præpositionum.*

1. *PRÆPOSITIONES* *Ad,*

*apud, ante, &c.* Accusativum regunt; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Ad* <sup>b</sup> *patrem.*

2. *Præpositiones* *A, ab,*

*abs, &c.* regunt Ablativum;

<sup>a</sup> *A* <sup>b</sup> *patre.*

3. *Præpositiones* *In, sub,*

*super & subter,* regunt Accusativum cum motus ad locum significatur; ut,

*Eo* <sup>a</sup> *in* <sup>b</sup> *scholam.*

<sup>a</sup> *Sub* <sup>b</sup> *mœnia tendit;* *Virg.*

*Incidit* <sup>a</sup> *super* <sup>b</sup> *agmina,* *Id.*

*Ducit* <sup>a</sup> *subter* <sup>b</sup> *fastigia te-*

*ti,* *Id.*

*At si motus vel quies in*

*significetur, In & sub*

*regunt Ablativum; Super &*

*subter vel Accusativum vel*

*lativum; ut,*

*Vedéo vel discurre* <sup>a</sup> *in* <sup>b</sup> *schola.*

*Recubo vel ambulo* <sup>a</sup> *sub*

<sup>b</sup> *umbra.*

*sedens* <sup>a</sup> *super* <sup>b</sup> *arma,* *Virg.*

*Fronde* <sup>a</sup> *super* *viridi,* *Id.*

*Quantity governs the Genitive; as,*

*The day before that day.*

*Every where.*

*There's enough of words.*

2. *Some Derivative* *Ad,* <sup>67</sup>  
*verbs govern the Case of*

*their Primitives; as,*

*He speaks the most elegantly of all.*

*To live agreeably to Nature.*

2. *Of Prepositions.*

1. *THE* *Prepositions* *Ad,* <sup>68</sup>  
*apud, ante, &c.* govern the *Accusative; as,*

*To the Father.*

2. *The Prepositions* *A, ab,* <sup>69</sup>  
*abs, &c.* govern the *Ablative; as,*

*From the Father.*

3. *The Prepositions* *In, sub,* <sup>70</sup>  
*super and subter, govern the*

*Accusative when Motion to*

*a Place is signified; as,*

*I go into the School.*

*He goes under the Walls.*

*It fell upon the Troops.*

*He brings [him] under*

*the Roof of the House.*

\* *But if Motion or Rest in*

*a Place be signified, In and*

*sub govern the Ablative; Super*

*and subter either the Accusative or Ablative; as,*

*I sit or run up and down*

*in the School.*

*I ly or walk under the*

*Shadow.*

*Sitting above the Arms.*

*Upon the green Grass.*

G

Vend

# 98 *Ru liments of the Latin Tongue,*

*Vena* <sup>a</sup> *subter* <sup>b</sup> *cutem* *dis-*  
*persa*, Plin.

<sup>a</sup> *Subter* <sup>b</sup> *littore*, Catull.

4. ¶ *Præpositio* in compo-  
sitione eundem sæpe *Casum*  
regit quem *extra*; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Adeamus* <sup>b</sup> *scholam*.

<sup>a</sup> *Exeamus* <sup>b</sup> *scholâ*.

The Veins dispersed un-  
der the Skin.

Beneath the Shoar.

4. *A Præpositio* oftentimes  
governs the same Case in  
Composition that it does  
without it; as,

Let us go to the School.

Let us go out of the School

3. *Inter*

¶ The Prepositions, with the Cases they govern,  
are contained in these Verses:

1. Hæ quantum adsciscunt *Casum* sibi *Præposituræ*;  
*Ad*, *penes*, *adversum*, *cis*, *citra*, *adversus*, & *extra*,  
*Ultra*, *post*, *prater*, *juxta*, *per*, *pone*, *secundum*,  
*Erga*, *apud*, *ante*, *secus*, *trans*, *supra*, *propter*, & *intra*,  
*Quis* addas *contra*, *circum*, *circa*, *inter*, *ob*, *infra*.

2. Hæ sextum poscunt; *A*, *cum*, *tenuis*, *abs*, *ab*, & *absque*,  
*Atque* *palam*, *pro*, *pra*, *clam*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *fine*, *coram*.

3. *Sub*, *super*, *in*, *subter*, quantum sextumque requirunt.

NOTE, 1. That *Versus* and *Usque* are put after their Cases; as, *Italia*  
*versus*, Towards Italy; *Oceanum usque*, As far as the Ocean. But (as  
we have already observed, Page 67.) these are properly *Adverbs*, the *Prepositio*  
*AD* being understood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenuis* is also put after its Case; as, *Mento tenuis*, Up  
to the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenuis* governs the *Genitive Plural*, 1. When the Word  
wants the *Singular*; as, *Cuniarum tenuis*, As far as [the Town] Cuma.  
When we speak of things of which we have naturally but two; as, *Crun-*  
*tenuis*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Consonants*, *Ab* and *Ex* before  
*Vowels* and *Consonants*; *Abi* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE, 5. That *subter* hath very rarely the *Ablat.* and only among Poets.

NOTE, 6. That in English *IN* is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative*,  
TO of the *Accusative*.

NOTE, 7. *IN* for *Erga*, *contra*, *per*, *supra*, *ad*, &c. governs the *Ablat.*  
as, *Amor in patriam*. *Quid ego in te commisi?* *Crescit in dies singulos*.  
*perium Regum in proprios greges*, Horat. *Pisces in cœnam emi*. But  
for *inter* governs the *Ablative*; as, *In amicis habere*, Sallust.

*SUB* for *circa* governs the *Accusat.* as, *sub cœnam*.

*SUPER* for *Ultra*, *prater* and *inter*, governs the *Accusat.* as, *Super Gra-*  
*mantas*, Virg. *Super gratiam suam*, Sallust. *In sermone super cœnam*  
Suet. For *de* it governs the *Ablat.* as, *Super hac re nimis*, Cic.

NUMB. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes Place when the *Prepositio*  
may be dissolved from the Verb, and put before the Case by itself; as,  
*loquor patrem*, i. e. *Loquor ad patrem*. And even then the *Prepositio*  
frequently repeated; as, *Exire e finibus suis*, Cæs.



# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 99

## 3. Interjectionum.

### \* 1. INTERJECTIONES

O, heu & prob, regunt Vocativum, interdum Accusativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> O formose <sup>b</sup> puer.

<sup>a</sup> Heu <sup>b</sup> me miserum!

\* 2. Hei & Væ regunt Dativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Hei <sup>b</sup> mihi!

<sup>a</sup> Væ <sup>b</sup> vobis.

## 4. Conjunctionum.

### \* 1. CONJUNCTIONES

Et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, & quædam aliæ, connectunt similes Casus & Modos; ut,

Honora <sup>b</sup> patrem <sup>a</sup> & <sup>b</sup> matrem.

Nec <sup>b</sup> scribit, <sup>a</sup> nec <sup>b</sup> legit.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam & dummodo Subjunctivo Modo ferè semper adhærent; ut,

Lego <sup>a</sup> ut <sup>b</sup> discam.

<sup>a</sup> Utinam <sup>b</sup> sapires.

## 3. Of Interjections.

### 1. THE Interjections O, 73

Heu, and Proh, govern the Vocative, and sometimes the Accusative; as,

O fair Boy.

Ah Wretch that I am!

2. Hei and Væ govern the Dative; as,

Ah me!

Wo to you.

## 4. Of Conjunctions.

### 1. THE Conjunctions Et, 75

ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, and some others, couple like Cases and Moods; as,

Honour your Father and Mother.

He neither writes nor reads.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam and dummodo are for the most part joined with the Subjunctive Mood; as,

I read that I may learn.

I wish you were wise.

G 2 SYN-

Numb. 75. To these add *Quam, nisi, præterquam, an*, and Adverbs of Likeness. The Reason of this Construction is because the Words so coupled depend all upon the same Word, which is express to one of them, and understood to the other.

Numb. 76. To these add all Indefinite Words, that is, Interrogatives, whether Nouns, Pronouns, Adverbs or Conjunctions, when taken in a doubtful or indefinite Sense; such as, *Quis, uter, quantus, &c. Ubi, quo, unde, &c. Cur, quare, quamobrem, num, an, anne, &c.* (See Page 65 and 70.) They generally become Indefinites, when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, such as, *Scio, nescio, video, intelligo, dubito*, and the like; as, *Ubi est frater tuus? Nescio ubi sit. An venturus est? Dubito an venturus sit.*

NE the Adverb of Forbidding requires the Imperative or Subjunctive; as, *Ne time, or Ne times.* See Page 47.

*Dum, quam, quod, si, fin, ni, nisi, etsi, etiamsi, priusquam, simulac, siquidem, quandoquidem, &c.* are joined sometimes with the Indicative, and sometimes with the Subjunctive.

SYNTAXEOS

*Synopsis,*

Sive

*Genuina & maximè necessaria Constructionis Regula, ad quas cetera omnes reducuntur.*

AXIOMATA.

I. OMNIS Oratio constat ex Nomine & Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus habet suum Verbum expressum vel suppressum.

III. Omne Verbum finitum habet suum Nominativum expressum vel suppressum.

IV. Omne Adjectivum habet suum Substantivum expressum vel suppressum.

*Sex Casuum Constructio.*

I. OMNE Verbum finitum expressum vel suppressum concordat cum Nominativo expresso vel suppresso in Numero & Persona; ut,

*Puer legit.*

*[Homines] Aiunt.*

*Romani [cooperant] festinare.*

A Summary of  
SYNTAX,

Or

The true and most necessary Rules of Construction, to which all the rest are reduced.

First PRINCIPLES.

I. EVERY Speech [or Sentence] consists of a Noun and a Verb.

II. Every Nominative hath its own Verb express'd or understood.

III. Every Finite Verb hath its own Nominative express'd or understood.

IV. Every Adjective hath its own Substantive express'd or understood.

The Construction of the Six Cases.

I. EVERY Verb of the Finite Mood express'd or understood agrees with its Nominative express'd or understood in Number and Person; as,

The Boy reads.

They say.

The Romans made haste.

II. Omnis

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 101

II. Omnis Genitivus regitur à Substantivo expresso vel suppresso; ut,

*Liber fratris.*

*Est [officium] patris.*

III. Dativus Acquisitionis,

i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur

vel adimitur] cuius Nomini

ut Verbo expresso vel suppresso jungitur; ut,

*Dedi Petro.*

*Cui dedisti?*

[Dedi] Petro.

*Utilis bello.*

*Non est [aptus] solvendo,*

IV. Omnis Accusativus regitur à Verbo Activo vel

Præpositione expressis vel

suppressis; ut,

*Amo Deum;*

*Et [amo] parentes.*

*Ad patrem.*

*Abiit [ad] Londinum.*

Aut Infinitivo præponitur

pressus vel suppressus; ut,

*Dicit se scribere.*

*Dicit mihi [me] esse bonum.*

V. Omnis Vocativus absolute

ponitur, addita nonnunquam

Interjectione O; ut,

*Dave.*

*Heus Syre.*

VI. Omnis Ablativus regitur

à Præpositione expressa vel

suppressa; ut,

*Ab puero.*

*Exultat [pro] gaudio.*

II. Every Genitive is governed by a Substantive expressed or understood; as,

The Book of my Brother.

It is the Duty of a Father.

III. The Dative of Acquisition

[i. e. to which any thing

is acquired, or from which it

is taken] is joined to any Noun

or Verb expressed or understood; as,

I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it?

To Peter.

Profitable for War.

He is not able to pay.

IV. Every Accusative is governed by an Active Verb, or a

Preposition expressed or understood; as,

I love God;

and my Parents.

To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

Or is put before the Infinitive

expressed or understood; as,

He says that he is writing.

I may be good.

V. Every Vocative is placed

absolutely, the Interjection O

being sometimes added; as,

O Davus.

Come hither Cyrus.

VI. Every Ablative is governed by a Preposition

expressed or understood; as,

From a Child.

He leaps for Joy.

APPENDIX

I. Omnis Page 67, and Larger Syntax, Page 97 and 98.

## APPENDIX.

I. **O**MNE Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo expresso vel suppresso, in Genere, Numero & Casu; ut,

*Bonus vir.*

*Triste [negotium].*

II. Substantiva significantia eandem rem conveniunt in Casu; ut,

*Dominus Deus.*

III. Omnis Infinitivus regitur a Verbo vel Nomine expressis vel suppressis; ut,

*Cupio discere.*

*Dignus amari.*

*Populus [cepit] mirari.*

I. **E**VERT Adjective agrees with a Substantive express or understood, in Gender, Number and Case as,

A good Man.

A sad Thing.

II. Substantives signifying the same thing agree in Case as,

The Lord God.

III. Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Noun express or understood; as,

I desire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondred.

## EXPLANATION.

**A**LL Construction is either TRUE or APPARENT, or (as Grammarians express it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE Construction is founded upon the essential Properties of Words, and is almost the same in all Languages. APPARENT Construction intirely depends upon Custom, which either for Elegance or Dispatch leaves out a great many Words otherwise necessary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The first is comprised in these few Fundamental Rules, and more fully branched out in the Larger Syntax. The other is also interspersed through the Larger Syntax but distinguished from that which is True by an Asterisk.

The Cases mentioned in the Rules of the Larger Syntax immediately cover the Rules of this Summary to which they respectively belong; and that are True without any Ellipsis; these that are Figurative by having an Ellipsis supplied as follows, as they are numbered in the Margent.

To RULE II. are reduced Numb. 13, supple *negotium*. Numb. 14, 47, sup. *de causa, gratia*, or *in re, negotio*. Numb. 15, sup. *de numero*. Numb. 21, sup. *de negotio*. Numb. 22 and 23, sup. *officium, negotium*, &c. Numb. 24, sup. 1. *Sat*, taken from the Verb. 2. *de causa*, &c. Numb. 29, *memoriam, notitiam, verba*, &c. Numb. 30, sup. *de crimine, pena*, &c. Numb. 35, and 36, sup. *pro re*, or *pretio aris*. Numb. 40, sup. *inter negotia* and *res* [fert] *se ad negotia*. Numb. 42, sup. *res, negotium*, &c. Numb. 43, sup. *in urbe*. Numb. 60, *Domi*, sup. *in adibus*. Numb. 66. These seem to be taken for Substantive Nouns.

To RULE III. is reduced Numb. 73, sup. *Malum est*; or these Judgments are used as Substantives.

P  
To  
quod a  
nea m  
73, sup  
To  
ne. No  
Num  
and 55  
77, sup  
up. in,  
NOTE  
unds ar  
them.  
NOTE  
ully sup  
ad that  
is under  
nus [ex  
NOTE  
Case by  
the Vocat  
ive TU  
express i  
NOTE,  
require th  
do. IV.

EXPO  
and  
super Ord  
I. A SI  
1. A SI  
2. A CO  
it, joine  
These C  
comparati  
c. 3. In  
In a Sim  
Its Accid  
1. The  
2. The  
Vocativ  
re to int  
ne; as, f  
mit the ge  
and these a

## Part III. Chap. II. of Resolution. 103

TO RULE IV. belong Numb. 18, 53, and 62, sup. *ad*. Numb. 33. sup. *mod ad*. Numb. 41, i. e. *Est inter mea negotia; Refert* (or *res fert*) *se ad mea negotia*, &c. Numb. 58, sup. *ad* or *in*. Numb. 64. sup. *per*. Numb. 63, sup. *sentio, iugeo*, &c.

TO RULE VI. belong Numb. 12. sup. *e, ex, or cum*. Numb. 19, sup. *pra*. Numb. 20, sup. *de, e, ex, cum*, &c. Numb. 21, sup. *a, ab*, &c.

Numb. 34, sup. *pro*. Numb. 37, 38, sup. *a, ab, de, e, ex*. Numb. 51, and 55, sup. *pra, cum, a, ab, e, ex*, &c. Numb. 54, sup. *in, or de*. Numb. 57, sup. *in*. Numb. 59, sup. *a, ab, e, ex*. Numb. 62, sup. *in*. Numb. 64, sup. *in, or pro*. Numb. 65, sup. *sub, cum, a, ab*.

NOTE, 1. That under *Verbs* must also be comprehended *Participles*, *Gerunds* and *Supines*, because the general Signification of *Verbs* is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That as a Consequence of this, a learned Grammarian ingeniously supposes that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb*, and that when they seem to be governed by a *Noun*, the *Participle existens* is understood; as, *Utilis* [*existens*] *bello*. *Pollio praesidium* [*existens*] *reis*. *Diogenus* [*existens*] *amari*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no part of a Sentence, but the Case by which we excite one to hear or execute what we say. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative*, as frequently happens, the *Nominative TU* or *VOS* is understood; and that even tho' these Words be already express'd in the *Vocative*; as, *Tu Jacobe lege*, i. e. *O in Jacobe, tu lege*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Vocative* is sufficient to itself, and does not necessarily require the *Interjection O*. See *Vossius*, *Lib. VII. Cap. 69*, and *Saunders*, *Lib. IV. de Ellipsi Verb. Audio* & *Narro*.

## C H A P. II.

### Of Exposition or Resolution.

**E**XPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the Unfolding of a Sentence, and placing all the Parts of it, whether express'd or understood, in their proper Order, that the true Sense and Meaning of it may appear.

I. A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound*.

1. A SIMPLE Sentence is that which hath one *Finite Verb* in it.

2. A COMPOUND Sentence is that which hath two or more such Verbs in it, joined together by some *Couples*.

These COUPLES are of four Sorts, 1. The *Relative QUI*. 2. Some *Comparative Words*, such as *Tantus, quantus; Talis, qualis; Tam, quam*, &c. 3. *Indefinite Words* [See Page 70 and 99.] 4. *Conjunctions*.

In a *Simple Sentence* there are two things to be considered, 1. Its *Essential*, 2. Its *Accidental Parts*.

1. The *Essential Parts* of a Sentence are a *Nominative* and a *Verb*.

2. The *Accidental Parts* are of four Kinds, 1. Such as excite *Attention*, as the *Vocative* and exciting *Particles*; as, *O, en, ecce, heus*, &c. 2. Such as serve to introduce a Sentence, or to shew its *Dependence* upon what was said before; as, *Fam, haecenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea*, &c. 3. Such as limit the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative* or *Verb*, and these are *Substantive Nouns*. 4. Such as qualify and explain them, viz.

*Adje-*



*Adjectives, Adverbs and Prepositions, with their Cases. Sometimes a Part of a Compound Sentence supplies the Place of these two last kinds of Words.*

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. *NATURAL Order* is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another in the same Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

*ARTIFICIAL Order* is when Words are so ranged as to render them more agreeable to the Ear; but so as the Sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A Sentence may be resolved from the *Artificial* into the *Natural Order* by the following Rules.

1. Take the *Vocative, Exclaiming and Introductory Words*, where they are found.

2. The *NOMINATIVE*.

3. Words *limiting or explaining it*, i. e. Words agreeing with or governing by it, or by another successively (till you come to the *Verb*;) where they are found.

4. The *VERB*.

5. Words *limiting or explaining it*, &c. where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are understood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it severally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

## E X A M P L E.

*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorum, si talibus monumentis praeceptisque latere.* Cic. Orat. lib. 3.

Farewell then my [Son] Cicero, and assure your self that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take Delight in such Writings and Instructions.

This Compound Sentence is resolved into these five Simple Sentences.

1. *Igitur mi [fili] Cicero, [tu] vale,* 2. *Et [tu] persuade tibi te esse quidem carissimum [filium] mihi;* 3. *sed [tu] persuade tibi te] fore cariorum [filium mihi in] multo [negotio]* 4. *si [tu] latere talibus monumentis,* 5. *Et [tu] latere talibus] praeceptis.*

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative Words* stand always first in a Sentence, unless a *Preposition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative Words* stand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unless it is a *Preposition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive Mood* is used in Compound Sentences.

NOTE, 5. That the Parts of a Compound Sentence are separated from one another by these Marks called *INTERPUNCTIONS*. 1. These that are smaller, named *Clauses*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. These that are greater, named *Members*, by this Mark (:) called *Colon*, or this (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no Connection with the rest, it is enclosed within what we call a *Parenthesis*, marked thus, ( )

But when the Sentence, whether Simple or Compound, is fully ended, if it be a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is closed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a *Question* is asked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. If *Wonder* or some other sudden *Passion* is signified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration*.

## F I N I S.

PRIMA

*Morum & Pietatis*

PRÆCEPTA,

VIZ.

*Diſta ſeptem Sapientum è Græcis.*

I. *Gulielmi Lili Monita Pædagogica.*

II. *Dion. Catonis Diſticha Moralia.*

III. *Joan. Sulpitii Verulani de Moribus & Civilitate Puerorum Carmen.*

IV. *Rudimenta Pietatis, ſive, Oratio Dominica, Symbolum Apoſtolicum & Decalogus; item duorum Sacramentorum, Baptiſmi & ſacræ Cœnæ Domini, Inſtitutiones.*

Quibus acceſſit

Summula CATECHISMI, ad piam Juniorum Educationem apprime utilis;

I T E M

Præcipua Capita Chriſtianæ religionis, deſumpta è ſacrâ Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Teſtamenti.

---

*Amor Domini initium Sapientia eſt. Prov. i. 7.*

*Pietas ad omnia utilis eſt, promiſſiones habens & præſentis & futura vite. 1 Tim. iv. 8.*

---

EDINBURGI,

in ſædibus THO. RUDDIMANNI, Anno Dom. 1739.

*Dieta* SAPIENTUM è Græcis, *D. Erasmo Roterod.* Interprete.

*Aurea dicta, puer, qua sunt hic, mente recondes  
Hinc poteris magnâ commoditate frui.*

*Dieta* PERIANDRI CORINTHII.

<b>O</b> mnibus placeto.	Mortalia cogita.
Bona res quies.	Ne prior injuriam facias,
Periculosa temeritas. [tales;	Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Semper voluptates sunt mor-	Probrum fugito.
Honores autem immortales.	Responde in tempore.
Amicis adversâ fortunâ uten-	Ea facito quorum te non possi-
tibus idem esto.	Ne cui inideas. [pœniten-
Lucrum turpe, res pessima.	Oculis moderare.
Quicquid promiseris, facito.	Quod justum est imitare.
Infortunium tuum celato, ne	Benè meritos honora.
voluptate afficias inimicos.	Spem fove.
Veritati adhæreto.	Calumniam oderis.
Age quæ justa sunt.	Affabilis esto.
Violentiam oderis.	Cum errâris, muta consiliu-
Principibus cede.	Concordiam sectare.
Voluptati tempera.	Diurnam amicitiam custodi-
A jurejurando abstine.	Magistratus metue.
Pietatem sectare.	Omnibus te ipsum præbe.
Laudato honesta.	Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
A vitiis abstine.	Ne tempori credideris.
Beneficium repende.	Te ipsum ne negligas.
Supplicibus misericors esto.	Seniorem reverere.
Liberos instrue.	Mortem oppete pro patria.
Sapientum utere consuetudi-	Ne quavis de re doleas.
Lite[m] oderis. [ne.	Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
Bonos in pretio habeto.	Sperato tanquam mortalis.
Arcanum cela.	Parcito tanquam immortalis.
Cede magnis.	Ne efferaris gloria.
Opportunitatem expedito.	Largire cum utilitate.

Amic

amicis utere.  
Fortuum ne irrideto.

Dilige amicos.  
Consule inculpate.

*Dista* BIAN TIS PRIENENSIS.

**N** speculo te ipsum contem-  
plare, & si formosus ap-  
parebis, age quæ deceant  
formam : si deformis,  
quod in facie minus est,  
vel deest, id morum pen-  
sato pulchritudine.  
Audito multa :  
loquere pauca.  
Ne numine ne male loquaris :

Quid sit autem ausculta.  
Prius autem intellige ; & de-  
inde ad opus accede.  
Ne ob divitias laudaris vi-  
rum indignum.  
Persuasione cape, non vi.  
Compara in adolescentia quæ-  
dam modestiam, in senectu-  
te verò prudentiam.

*Dista* PITTACI MITYLENÆI.

**U**æ facturus es, ea ne  
dixeris ; frustratus e-  
nim rideberis.  
Deposito reddere.  
Esidiosus ne esto.  
Familiaribus in minutis re-  
bus læsus, feras.  
Amico ne maledixeris.  
Inimicum ne putes a micum.  
Vixori dominare [*Christiane.*]  
Quæ feceris parentibus, ead-  
em à liberis expecta.  
Inter amicos ne fueris iudex.  
Ne contende cum parentibus,  
[etiam si] iusta dixeris.  
Ne geras imperium, prius-  
quam parere didiceris.

Infortunatum ne irriseris.  
Audito libenter.  
Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.  
Ne festines loqui.  
Nosce te ipsum.  
Legibus pare.  
Voluptatem coerce.  
Ne quid nimis.  
Inimicitiam solve.  
Ante omnia venerare Numen.  
Parentes reverere.  
Quæ fieri non possunt, cave  
concupiscas.  
Uxorem ducito ex æqualibus ;  
ne, si ex ditioribus duxeris,  
dominos tibi pares, non  
affines.

*Dista* CLEOBULI LINDII.

**N**E sis unquam elatus.  
Domus curam age.  
Proceres evolve.  
Iste iudicato.  
Bonis benefacito.  
Liberos tibi charissimos erudi.  
Maledicentia temperato.

Suspicionem abijcito.  
Parentes patientiâ vince.  
Beneficii accepti memento.  
Inferiorem ne rejicias.  
Aliena ne concupiscas.  
Ne te ipsum præcipites in  
discrimen.

Res amici diligas, ac perinde Citiùs ad infortunatos am  
 serves ut tuas. [minum. cos, quàm ad fortunatos  
 Lapis auri index, aurum ho- proficiscere.  
 Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris. Mendax calumniâ vitam co  
 Voto nil pretiosius. rumpit.  
 Ne cui miniteris; est enim Mendaces odit quisque pr  
 muliebre. dens & sapiens.

*Dicta* CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.

**N** Osce te ipsum. [Italia. Sapientiâ utere.  
 Ne cui inideas mor. Multitudini place.  
 Temperantiam exerce. Oderis calumnias.  
 Turpia fuge. Ne quid suspiceris.  
 Tempori parce. Moribus probatis esto.  
 Justè rem para. Ne fueris onerosus.

*Dicta* SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.

**D** Eum cole. Legibus pareto.  
 Parentes reverere. Cogita quod justum est.  
 Amicis succurre. Iracundiâ moderare.  
 Veritatem sustineto. Virtutem laudato.  
 Ne jurato. Malos odio prosequitor.

*Dicta* THALETIS MILESII.

**P** Rincipem honora. Gloriam sedare.  
 Amicos probato. Vitæ curam age.  
 Similis tui sis. Pacem dilige.  
 Nemini promittito. Laudatus esto apud omnes.  
 Quod adest boni consulito. Sufurronem ex ædibus ej  
 A vitiis abstineti. A

GULIELMI LILII *Monita Pædagogica*  
*Sive Carmen de Moribus ad suos Discipulos.*

**Q** U i mihi discipulus, Puer, es, cupis atque doceri,  
 Huc ades, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.  
 Manè citus lectum fuge, mollem discute somnum:  
 Tempa petas supplex, & venerare Deum.  
 Attamen in primis facies sit lota manusque;  
 Sint nitidæ vestes, comptaue cæsaries.  
 Desidiam fugiens, cum te schola nostra vocarit,  
 Adsis; nulla pigræ sit tibi causâ moræ.



le Præceptorem cum videris, ore saluta,  
 Et condiscipulos ordine quosque tuos.  
 Tu quoque fac sedeas, ubi te sedisse iubemus;  
 Inque loco, nisi sis iussus abire, mane.  
 Et magis ut quisque est doctrinæ munere clarus,  
 Hoc magis is clarâ sede locandus erit.  
 Calpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,  
 Sint semper studiis arma parata tuis.  
 Quid dictabo, scribes; at singula rectè:  
 Nec macula, aut scriptis menda sit ulla tuis.  
 Et tua nec laceris dictata aut carmina chartis  
 Mandes, quæ libris inseruisse decet.  
 Ne recognoscas tibi lecta, animoque revolvās:  
 Si dubites, nunc hos consule, nunc alios.  
 Si dubitat, qui sæpe rogat, mea dicta tenebit;  
 Ille qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.  
 Nescis, puer, quæso; noli dediscere quicquam:  
 Ne mens te insimulet conscia desidiæ.  
 Quæque animo attentus: quid enim docuisse juvabit,  
 Si mea non firmo pectore verba premas?  
 Illi tam difficile est, quod non solertia vincat:  
 Invigila, & parata est gloria militiæ.  
 Tam veluti flores tellus, nec semina profert,  
 Ni sit continuo victa labore manûs:  
 Tu puer, ingenium si non exercitet, ipsum  
 Tempus & amittit, spem simul ingenii.  
 Etiam semper lex in sermone tenenda,  
 Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.  
 Cum stans studio, submissâ voce loqueris;  
 Nobis dum reddis, voce canorus eris.  
 Quæcunque mihi reddes, discantur ad unguem;  
 Singula & abjecto verbula redde libro.  
 Nec verbum quisquam dicturo suggerat ullum;  
 Quod puero exitium non mediocre parit.  
 Quicquam rogit, sic respondere studebis;  
 Ut laudem dictis & mereare decus.  
 In linguâ celeri nimis, aut laudabere tarda;  
 Est virtus medium, quod tenuisse juvat.  
 Quoties loqueris, memor esto loquere Latine;  
 Et veluti scopulos barbara verba fuge.  
 Alterea socios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,  
 Instrue; & ignaros ad mea vota trahe.

6 GVL. LILII *Carmen, &c.*

Qui docet indoctos, licet indoctissimus esset,  
 Ipse brevi reliquis doctior esse queat.  
 Sed tu nec stolidos imitabere Grammaticastros,  
 Ingens Romani dedecus eloqui:  
 Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus ore est,  
 Quem non auctorem barbarâ turba prober.  
 Grammaticas rectè si vis cognoscere leges,  
 Discere si cupias cultius ore loqui;  
 Addiscas veterum clarissima scripta virorum,  
 Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.  
 Nunc te Virgilius, nunc ipse Terentius optat,  
 Nunc simul amplecti te Ciceronis opus:  
 Quos qui non didicit, nil præter somnia vidit,  
 Certat & in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.  
 Sunt quos delectat (studio virtutis honestâ  
 Posthabito) nugis tempora conterere:  
 Sunt quibus est cordi, manibus pedibusve sodales,  
 Aut alio quovis sollicitare modo:  
 Est alius, qui se dum clarum sanguine jactat,  
 Insulso reliquis improbat ore genus,  
 Te tam prava sequi nolim vestigia morum:  
 Ne tandem factis præmia digna feras.  
 Nil dabis aut vendes, nil permutabis emelvé,  
 Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.  
 Insuper & nummos, irritamenta malorum,  
 Mitte aliis: Puerum nil nisi pura decent.  
 Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furta, cachinni,  
 Sint procul a vobis; Martis & arma procul.  
 Nil penitus dices, quod turpe, aut non sit honestum:  
 Est vitæ ac pariter janua lingua necis.  
 Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,  
 Jurare aut magni nomina sacra Dei.  
 Denique servabis res omnes, atque libellos,  
 Et tecum, quoties isque redisque, feres.  
 Effuge vel causas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,  
 In quibus & nobis displicuisse potes.

# DIONYSII CATONIS Disticha de Moribus, ad filium:

*Recognita de novo ad Metaphrasin Jos. Scaligeri, ejusdemque D. Erasmi, P. Scriverii & M. Zuer. Boxhornii Notas & Castigationes, à T. R.*

In usum Scholarum.

*Illis qua cecinit Themis aut Thymbræus Apollo,  
Non canit bicce catus deteriora Cato.*

*Præfatio cum brevissimis Præceptis.*

**Q**Uum animadverterem quàm plurimos homines graviter errare in via morum, succurrendum & consulendum eorum opinioni existimavi, maxime ut gloriôsè viverent, & honore contingerent. Nunc te (fili charissime) docebo, quo pacto mores animi tui componas. Igitur Præcepta mea ita legito, ut intelligas: Legere enim, & non intelligere, negligere est.

**I**Taque Deo supplica.

Parentes ama.

Cognatos cole.

Magistrum metue.

Datum serva.

Foro te para.

Cum bonis ambula.

Ad consilium ne accesseris,

antequam voceris.

Mundus esto.

Saluta libenter.

Majori cede.

Minori parce.

Rem tuam custodi.

Verecundiam serva.

Diligentiam adhibe.

Libros lege.

Quæ legeris memento.

Familiam cura.

Blandus esto.

Irasci ab re noli.

Neminem irriseris.

Miserum ne irriseris.

Mutuum dato.

Cui des videto.

In judicium adesto.

Conjugem ama.

Liberos erudi.

Patere legem quam ipse tuleris.

Pauca in convivio loquere.

Convivare raro.

Quod satis est dormi.

Jusjurandum serva.

Vino te tempera.

Pugna pro patria.

Nil temerè credideris.

Tu te consule.

Meretricem fuge.

Literas discere.

Nihil mentiri debes.

Bonis benefacito.

Maledicus ne esto.

Existimationem retine.

Æquum judica.

Parentes patientiâ vince.

A 4

Bene

# Distichorum CATONIS,

Beneficii accepti memor esto.	Aleas fuge.	[ris
Ad prætorium statò.	Nihil ex arbitrio virium fece	Ru
Consultus esto.	Minorem te ne contempseris	Na
Utere virtute.	Aliena concupiscere noli.	Re
Iracundiam tempera.	Illud stude quod justum est,	Ra
Trocho lude.	Amorem libenter ferto.	

## DISTICHORUM de Moribus,

### LIBER I.

*Dei cultus præcipuus.*

**S**I Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt,  
Hic tibi præcipue sit purâ mente colendus.

*Somnolentia vitanda.*

Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto:  
Nam diuturna quies vitiiis alimenta ministrat.

*Cobibenda lingua.*

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam:  
Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.

*Sibi ipsi conveniendum.*

Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse:  
Conveniet nulli qui secum diffidet ipse.

*Nemo temere culpandus.*

Si vitam inspicias hominum, si denique mores,  
Cum culpas alios, nemo sine crimine vivit.

*Utilitas divitiis anteponenda.*

Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara, relinque:  
Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.

*Mores pro tempore mutandi.*

Et † levis & constans, ut res exoptulat, esto: † al. Constans  
Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat. † aut levis re  
gnante me

*Uxori non semper assentiendum.*

Nil temerè uxori de servis crede querenti:  
Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjunx diligit, odit.

*Instandum correctioni amici.*

Cumque mones aliquem, nec se velit ipse moneri,  
Si tibi sit charus, noli desistere cœptis.

*Stulti verbis non vincuntur.*

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis:  
Sermo datur cunctis, animi sapientia paucis.

*Amicus sibi quisque primus.*

Dilige sic alios, ut sis tibi charus amicus,  
Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur,





# Distichorum CATONIS,

*Blandiloquentia suspecta.*

Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare :  
Fistula dulce canit, volucrem dum decipit auceps.

*Liberi artibus instruendi.*

Cum tibi sint nati, nec opes; tunc artibus illos  
Instrue, quò possint inopem defendere vitam.

*Res quomodo assimanda.*

Quod vile est, carum; quod carum est, vile putato:  
Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habebis ulli.

*Culpata non facienda.*

Quæ culpare soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse :  
Turpe est doctori, cum culpa redarguit ipsum.

*Concedenda petenda.*

Quod iustum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum :  
Nam stultum est petere id, quod possit jure negari.

*Nota ignotis non commutanda.*

Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis :  
Cognita iudicio constant, incognita casu.

*Dies quisque supremus putandus.*

Cum dubia incertis versetur vita periculis,  
Pro lucro tibi pone diem quicumque laboras.

*Obsecundandum amicis.*

Vincere cum possis, interdum cede sodali :  
Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

*Amicitia mutua officia.*

Ne dubites, cum magna petes, impendere parva :  
His etenim rebus conjungit Gratia charos.

*Amicitia rixas odit.*

Litem inferre cave cum quo tibi gratia juncta est :  
Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

*Castigatio sine ira.*

Servorum ob culpam cum te dolor urget in iram,  
Ipse tibi moderare, tuis ut parcere possis.

*Patientia vincendum.*

Quem superare potes, interdum vince ferendo :  
Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

*Quæ sita sunt servanda.*

Conserva potius, quæ sunt jam parta labore :  
Cum labor in damno est, crescit mortalis egestas.

*Consulendum sibi in primis.*

Dapsilis interdum notis, & charus amicis,  
Cum fueris felix, semper tibi proximus esto.

## LIB. II. PRÆFATIO.

**T**elluris si fortè velis cognoscere cultus,  
 Virgilium legito. Quod si magè nòsse laboras  
 Herbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,  
 Corporis ut cunctos possis depellere morbos,  
 Si Romana cupis & civica noscere bella,  
 Lucanum quæras, qui Martis prælia dixit.  
 Si quis amare velis, vel discere amare legendo,  
 Nasonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc est,  
 Ut sapiens vivas, audi quæ discere possis,  
 Per quæ semotum vitiis traducitur ævum.  
 Ergo ades, & quæ sit sapientia, discce legendo.

*De omnibus bene merendum.*

**S**i potes, ignotis etiam prodesse memento:  
 Utilius regno est meritis acquirere amicos.

*Arcana Dei non scrutanda.*

Mitte arcana Dei, cœlumque inquirere quid sit:  
 Cum sis mortalis, quæ sunt mortalia cura.

*Mortis timor gaudia vita pollet.*

Linque metum lethi, nam stultum est tempore in omni,  
 Dum mortem metuis, amittere gaudia vitæ.

*Iracundia cavenda.*

Iratus de re incerta contendere noli:  
 Impedit ira animum, ne possit cernere verum.

*Expendendum ubi opus est.*

Fac sumptum propere, cum res desiderat ipsa:  
 Dandum etenim est aliquid, cum tempus postulat aut res.

*Fortuna modica tutior.*

Quod nimium est fugito, parvo gaudere memento:  
 Tuta magè est puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

*Occulta vitia reticenda.*

Quod pudeat, socios prudens celare memento:  
 Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi displicet uni.

*Occulta tandem revelantur.*

Nolo putes pravos homines peccata lucrari:  
 Temporibus peccata latent, sed tempore + parent. *i. e. ap-*

*Imbecillitas virtute compensatur.*

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli:  
 Consilio pollet, cui vim natura negavit. *parent, cui-*

*Cedendum potiori ad tempus.*

**L**I Cui sciëris non esse parem te, tempore cede:  
 Vidorem à victo superari sæpe videmus. *go patent*  
*contra me.*  
*tri legem.*

*Rixan-*

*Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.*

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis:

Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima crescit.

*Fortuna non quarenda sorte.*

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte:

Quid statuatur de te, sine te deliberat ipse.

*Luxus odium generat.*

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento:

Quæ si non lædit, tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

*Animus non deponendus ob iniquum iudicium.*

Esto animo forti, cum sis damnatus iniquè:

Nemo diu gaudet, qui iudice vincit iniquo.

*Reconciliatis lis non refricanda.*

Litis præteritæ noli maledicta referre:

Post inimicitias iram meminisse, malorum est.

*Teipsum neque lauda, neque culpa.*

Nec te collaudes, nec te culpaveris ipse:

Hoc faciunt stulti, quos gloria vexat inanis.

*Parsimonia.*

Ut uter quæsitis parcè, cum sumptus abundat:

Labitur exiguo, quod partum est tempore longo.

*Supercilium nonnunquam deponendum.*

Inspiciens esto, cum tempus postulat, aut res:

Stultitiam simulare loco, prudentia summa est.

*Neque prodigus, neque avarus.*

Luxuriam fugito; simul & vitare memento

Crimen avaritiæ: nam sunt contraria famæ.

*Loquaci parum credendum.*

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper;

Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquuntur.

*Ebrius vinum non accuset.*

Quæ potu peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli:

Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

*Amicis consilia credenda.*

Consilium arcanum tacito committe sodali:

Corporis auxilium medico committe fideli.

*Successus malorum ne te offendant.*

Indignos noli successus ferre molestè:

Indulget fortuna malis ut lædere possit.

*Futuros casus prævidendos.*

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos:

Nam lævius lædit, quicquid prævidimus ante.

*Animus in adversis spe fovendus.*

Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli:

Spem retine: spes una hominem nec morte relinquit:

*Oppor-*

# LIBER III.

13

*Opportunitas cum contingit tenenda.*

Rem, tibi quam noscis aptam, dimittere noli:  
Fronte capillatâ, post est occasio calva.

*Futura ex præteritis colligenda.*

Quod sequitur, spectâ; quodque imminet ante, videto:  
Illum imitare Deum, qui partem spectat utramque.

*Vita ratio habenda.*

Fortius ut valeas, interdum parcior esto:  
Paucâ voluptati debentur, plura salutî.

*Multitudini cedendum.*

Judicium populi nunquam contempseris unus:  
Ne nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

*Valetudo curanda.*

Sit tibi præcipuè, quod primum est, cura salutis:  
Tempora ne culpes, cum sis tibi causa doloris.

*Somnia non observanda.*

Somnia ne cures: nam mens humana quod optat,  
Dum vigilans sperat, per somnum cernit id ipsum.

## LIB. III. PRÆFATIO.

**H**oc quicunque voles carmen cognoscere, Lector,  
Quum præcepta ferat quæ sunt gratissima vitæ,  
Commoda multa feres. Sin autem spreveris illud,  
Non me scriptorem, sed te neglexeris ipse.

*Dandam esse operam literis.*

**I**nstrue præceptis animum, nec discere cesses:  
Nam sine doctrina vita est quasi mortis imago.

*Moribus captanda fama.*

Fortunæ donis semper parere memento:  
Non opibus bona fama datur, sed moribus ipsis.

*Recte agendo aliorum linguam ne timeas.*

Cum rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum:  
Arbitrii nostri non est quod quisque loquatur.

*Amici crimen celandum.*

Productus testis, salvo tamen ante pudore,  
Quantumcunque potes, celato crimen amici.

*Blandiloquentia suspecta.*

Sermo blandos blæsosque cavere memento:  
Implicitas veri + sana est, fraus ficta loquendi.

*Ignava vita fugienda.*

Egnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur:  
Nam cum animus languet, consumit inertia corpus.

*Animus fessus relaxandus.*

Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis:  
Ut possis animo quemvis sufferre laborem.

Oppor-

Male

*Malo animo neminem reprehendas.*

Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carpsieris unquam:  
Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.

*Hereditas augenda.*

Quod tibi fors dederit tabulis suprema notato,  
Augendo serva, ne sis quem fama loquatur.

*Senectus sit munifica.*

Cum tibi divitiæ superant in fine senectæ;  
Munificus facito vivas, non parvus amicis.

*Verba attendenda, non os loquentis.*

Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,  
Nullius sensum, si prodest, temperis unquam.

*Præsenti utendum fortuna.*

Rebus & in censu si non est quod fuit ante,  
Fac vivas contentus eo quod tempora præbent.

*Uxor spe dotis non querenda.*

Uxorem fuge ne ducas sub nomine dotis:  
Nec retinere velis, si cœperit esse molesta.

*Alieno sapere exemplo.*

Multorum discce exemplo quæ facta sequaris,  
Quæ fugias: Vita est nobis aliena magistra.

*Nihil ultra vires.*

Quod potes, id tentes; operis ne pondere pressus  
Succumbat labor, & frustra tentata relinquo.

*Consentire videtur qui tacet.*

Quod nōsti haud recte factum, nolito silere:  
Ne videre malos imitari velle tacendo.

*Rigor favore temperandus.*

Judicis auxilium sub iniqua lege rogato:  
Ipsæ etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.

*Feras quæ tuâ culpâ pateris.*

Quod meritò pateris, patienter ferre memento:  
Cumque reus tibi sis, ipsum te iudice damna.

*Multa legenda, sed cum iudicio.*

Multa legas facito: perlectis + perlege multa: al. neglig  
Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda, poetæ.

*Modeste in convivio loquendum.*

Inter convivas fac sis sermone modestus:  
Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanus haberi.

*Iracundia uxoris non formidanda.*

Conjugis iratæ nolito verba timere:  
Nam lachrymis struit insidias, dum scœmina plorat.

*Quæsitis utendum, non abutendum.*

Utere quæsitis, sed ne videaris abuti:  
Qui sua consumunt, cum deest, aliena sequuntur.



# LIBER QV.

*Mors non formidanda.*

Fac tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam:  
Quæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorum est.

*Uxor proba, si loquax, ferenda.*

Uxoris linguam, si fruge est, ferre memento:  
Namque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacere.

*Pietas erga parentes.*

Equâ diligit charos pietate parentes:  
Nec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

## LIB. IV. PRÆFATIO.

**S**Ecuram quicumque cupis traducere vitam,  
Nec vitiis hære animum, quæ moribus obsunt;  
Hæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento: † al. quo  
vitæ utare.  
al. tu te u-  
tare.  
Invenies aliquid quo † te nitare magistro.

*Divitiarum contemptus.*

**D**Espice divitias, si vis animo esse beatus;  
Quas qui suspiciunt, medicant semper, avari.

*Vivere secundum naturam optimum.*

Commoda naturæ nullo tibi tempore deerunt,  
Si contentus eo fueris quod postulat usus.

*Res ratione regenda.*

Cum sis incautus, nec rem ratione gubernes,  
Noli fortunam, quæ † nulla est, dicere cæcam. † al. non est.

*Amor pecunia ad usum.*

Dilige \* denarium, sed parce dilge formam, \* al. denari.  
quam nemo sanctus nec honestus captat † habere. † al. ab ure.

*In valetudine ne opibus parcas.*

Cum fueris locuples, corpus curare memento:  
Ger dives habet nummos, \* sed non habet ipsum. \* al. se.

*Castigatio paterna ferenda.*

Verbera cum tuleris discens aliquando magistri,  
Per patris imperium, cum verbis exit in iram.

*Certa & utilia agenda.*

al. neglig es age quæ prosunt: rursus vitare memento  
quibus error inest, nec spes est certa laboris.

*Libenter donandum.*

Quod donare potes gratis, † concede roganti: † al. ne vende;  
nam rectè secisse bonis in parte \* lucrosum est. \* al. lucrorum.

*Suspicio statim expendenda.*

Quod tibi suspectum est, confestim discute quid sit:  
Namque solent, primò quæ sunt neglecta, nocere.

*Venus abstinentiâ cobibenda.*

Quæ te detineat Veneris damnosa voluptas,  
Pulgere gula noli, quæ ventris amica est.

*Homo*

## *Distichorum CATONIS,*

*Homo malus, fera pessima.*

Cum tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,  
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.

*Sapientia fortitudini præferenda.*

Cum tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires,  
Fac sapias; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.

*Amicus cordis medicus.*

Auxilium à notis petito, si fortè laboras,  
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quàm fidus amicus.

*Sacrificium spiritus dejectus.*

Cum sis ipse nocens, moritur cur víctima pro te?  
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.

*Amicus ex moribus deligendus.*

Cum tibi vel socium, vel fidum quæris amicum,  
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.

*Avaritia vitanda.*

Utere quasitis opibus; fuge nomen avari:  
Quid tibi divitiæ profunt, si pauper abundas?

*Voluptas inimica fama.*

Si famam sequare cupis, dum vivis, honestam;  
Fac fugias avaro, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitæ.

*Senem etiam delirum ne irriseris.*

Cum sapias animo, noli irridere senectam:  
Nam quicumque senet, sensus puerilis in illo est.

*Opes fluxæ, ars perpetua.*

Disce aliquid: nam cum subito fortuna recessit,  
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.

*Mores ex verbis cogniti.*

Perspicite tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur;  
Sermo etenim mores & celat & indicat idem.

*Ars usu juvanda.*

Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem:  
Ut cura ingenium, sic & manus adjuvat usum.

*Vita contemptus.*

Multùm ne cures venturi tempora fati:  
Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam.

*Discendum & docendum.*

Disce, sed à doctis: indoctos ipse doceto:  
Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.

*Bibendi ratio.*

Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus:  
Morbi causa mali nimia est & quandoque voluptas.

*Ne damnes quod probaveris.*

Laudaris quodcunque palam, quodcunque probaris,  
Hoc vide ne rursus levitatis crimine damnes.

*Circumspectus utraq̃ue fortunâ esto.*

tranquillis rebus quæ sunt adversa + timeto:  
ursus in adversis melius sperare memento.

† al. caveto:

*Studio crescit sapientia.*

discere ne cesses; curâ sapientia crescit:  
ara datur longo prudentia temporis usu.

*Parcè laudandum.*

parcè laudato: nam quem tu sæpe probâris,  
una dies, qualis fuerit, monstrabit, amicus

*Discere non pudeat.*

ne pudeat, quæ nesciêris, te velle doceri:

circaliquid laus est, + turpe est nil discere velle. † al. culpa

*Rebus utendum ad sobrietatem.*

cum Verere & Baccho lis est, sed juncta voluptas:  
quod blandum est, animo complectere, sed fuge lites.

*Tribus & tacitis non fidendum.*

remissos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento:  
quâ flumen placidum est forsan latet altius unda.

*Sors sorti conferenda.*

cum tibi displiceat rerum fortuna tuarum,  
ceterius specta + quo sis discrimine pejor.

† al. qui sit.

*Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.*

quod potes id tenta: nam litus carpere remis  
potius est multo, quam + velistendere in altum. † al. velupa.

*Cum iusto iniquè non contendendum.*

contra hominem iustum pravè contendere noli:  
imper enim Deus injustas ulciscitur iras.

*Fortuna utraq̃ue aq̃ue ferenda.*

reptis opibus noli tu flere querendo:  
sed gaude potius, + tibi si contingat habere.

† al. si nil.

*Ab amico quid ferendum.*

si iactura gravis, quæ sunt, amittere damnis:  
ut quædam, quæ ferre decet patienter amicum.

*Tempori non confidendum.*

tempora longa tibi noli promittere vitæ;  
locunque ingrederis sequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

*Deus quibus placandus.*

Thure Deum plada: vitulum sine crescat aratro; † al. Tute,  
ut credas placare Deum, dum cæde litatur.

*A potentioribus latus dissimula.*

cede locum læius, fortunæ cede potenti:  
dare qui potuit, prodesse aliquando valebit.

*Castiga teipsum.*

in quid peccâris, castiga te ipse subinde:  
læra dum sanas, dolor est medicina doloris.

B

Amicus

18 JOAN. SULPITII *Carmen.*

*Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.*

Damnâris nunquam, post longum tempus, amicum :  
Mutavit mores; sed pignora prima memento.

*Beneficiis collatis attende.*

Gratior officiis, quo sis mage charior, esto :

Ne nomen subeas quod dicitur † officiperda. † *officiperda*

*Suspicionem tolle.*

Suspectus cave sis, ne sis miser omnibus horis :

Nam timidis & suspectis aptissima mors est.

*Humanitas erga servos.*

Cum fueris famulos proprios mercatus in usus,

Ut servos dicas, homines tam esse memento.

*Occasionem rei commoda ne pratermittas.*

Quamprimum rapienda tibi est occasio prima,

Ne rursus quæras, quæ jam neglexeris ante.

*Non latandum repentino obitu.*

Morte repentinâ noli gaudere malorum :

Felices obeunt, quorum sine crimine vita est.

*Pauper simulatum vitet amicum.*

Cum tibi sit conjux, † ne res & fama laboret,

Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici.

*Funge studium.*

Cum tibi contigerit studio cognoscere multa;

Fac discas multa, & vites † nil velle doceri.

*Brevitas memoria amica.*

Miraris verbis nudis me scribere versus?

Hos brevitatis sensûs fecit conjungere binos.

JOANNIS SULPITII Verulani, de *Mo-*  
*bus & Civilitate Puerorum, Carmen.*

**Q**UOS decet in vita mores servare docemus,  
Virtuti ut studeas, literulisque simul.

Quæ te igitur moneo, miti, puer, indole serva;

Præque tuis oculis hæc mea jussa tene.

Omnibus in rebus studeas precor esse modestus :

Sis avidus laudis, sit tibi cura boni.

Sis pius ac sanctus, nec non venerare parentes :

Et noceas nulli, surripiasque nihil.

Futiles & mendax nunquam, nec credulus esto :

Dedecus & metuas, & reverere bonos.

Improba pestiferi fugias commercia cætus,

Sic & honorus eris, sic eris ipse bonus.

Nec maledicta refer, nec promas turpia dictu:

Est stomachosa quidem dicere turpe tibi.

Regnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ commoda pellit:

Parce gulæ turpi, luxuriamque fuge.

Parce & avaritiæ; bilem frenare memento,

Atque animi fastus, invidiamque simul.

Idus sis audensque bonis: temerarius esse

Despice: non audax sis, timidusve nimis.

Esto verecundus: rectum te lectus habebit;

Detege nec socium, nec tua membra, puer.

Nec sis difficilis nimium nimiumque severus;

Sed bonus & blandus conspiciare, puer.

Nec penitus mutum, nec te decet esse loquacem:

Convenit ille toro, convenit iste foro.

Hæc te servantem vitæ laus spesque futura;

Spernentem turpis poenæque morsque manent.

Hunc faciles aures, animum quoque trade serenum;

Morigerare mihi, mollia iussa dabo.

al. Sit sine labe toga, & facies sit lota manusque;

Stiria nec naso pendeat ulla tuo.

Nihil emineat, sint & sine sordibus ungues;

Sit coma, sit turpi calceus absque luto.

al. Linguaque non rigeat, careant rubigine dentes:

Atque palam pudeat te fricuisse caput;

Exprimere & pulices, scabiemque urgere nocentem;

Ne te sordidulum, qui videt ista, vocet.

tu spuīs, aut mungis nares, nutasve, memento

e Mo Post tua concussum vertere terga caput.

Ucorem haud tangas digitis, sputumve resorbas:

Panniculo nasum mungere nempe decet.

ruſtare cave, quin os in terga reflectas:

Stringe os, & crepitum comprime quæso, puer.

Unditiæque tibi placeant: medio quoque cultu

Utere, ne turpis vel videare levis.

Non sum qui laudem summo te accumbere mane:

Judice conveniens me dabit hora cibum.

Nec vos ante focum cœnas producite longas:

Esse decet vivas, vivere non ut edas.

Nec sis vinosus, quamvis potasse Catonem

Fama refert; fugias sumere vina mera.

Amque cibus nimius, potus quoque, maxima poena;

Corporis & vires ingeniique rapit.



20 JOAN. SULPITII *Carmen.*

Infernas mensam : nitidas imposito quadras,  
 Atque salem & Cererem, flumina, vina, dapes.  
 Deinde precare Deum, qui nobis cuncta benignè  
 Suggestit, ut sanctos det tibi mane cibos.  
 Atque, puer, jubeo, sedeas vel raro, sed astant  
 Pocula porge celer, tolle, repone dapes.  
 Juraque convivas super importare minister  
 Effuge; nam turpis sæpe fit inde toga.  
 Quodque jubebit herus, facilis semperque subito;  
 Quemque tibi dederit, tu tibi sume locum.  
 Et licet antiqui cubuissent pectore prono,  
 Te colla hæc atas recta tenere jubet.  
 Et finito mensæ cubitis hæerere potentes:  
 Tu tantum faciles pone, repone manus.  
 Quodque vir egregius pavido tibi porrigit, illud  
 Sume lubens, grates aptaque verba refer.  
 Esto tribus digitis, magnos nec sumito morsus:  
 Nec duplices offas mandere utrinque juvet.  
 Te vitare velim, cupidus ne ut lurco sonoras  
 Contractes fauces: mandere rite decet.  
 Gausape non macules, aut pectus; nec tibi mentum  
 Scillet; sitve tibi ne manus uncta, cave.  
 Sæpe ora & digitos mappâ siccabis adeptâ,  
 In quadra faciat nec tua palma moram.  
 Quod tibi vicinum fuerit, tu sume: sodali  
 Cede tuo, referat dum tamen ille manum.  
 Dumque in frustra secat, caveas sumpsisse recisa:  
 Lurco legit dulces absque rubore bolos.  
 Non, manibus gremio immixtis, tibi vellicet unguis  
 Quod sumes: residens non agitato pedes.  
 Incidasque prius quam dens contundat ossellam:  
 Tingantur rursum ne tibi morsa cave.  
 Ne lingas digitos, nec rodas turpiter ossa,  
 Ast ea cultello radere ritè potes.  
 Sive super mensam cortex cumuletur, & ipsa  
 Ossa, vel in quadram, præ pedibusve jace.  
 Nec digitis tenta, nec pinguis delige frustra:  
 Et quæcunque manus, huc tibi lumen eat.  
 Nec socium torvè inspicias, quidve ederit ille  
 Advertas: gestus inspicere sæpe tuos.  
 Pocula cum sumes, tergat tibi mappa labella:  
 Si tergas manibus, non mihi charus eris.

JOAN. SULPITII Carmen. 21

Una manus sumat pateram, ni hanc jactet in hostem  
† Theseus, aut Beli sint monumenta patris: † *Vid. Ovid.  
Met. 12. v. 235.  
& Virg. Æn. 1.  
v. 733.*  
Hanc binis quod si manibus captabis, id apte  
Efficies: digitis pocula sume tribus.  
Ac teneas oculos, nec supra pocula fare:  
Plena aliquo vites sit tibi bucca cibo.  
Deme merum cyatho, multum ne fortè superfit,  
Quod nolit socius sumere fortè tuus.  
Qui sapit, extinguet multo cum fonte falernum,  
Et parco lympham diluet ille mero.  
Haud facias binos haustus, nec fessus anheles,  
Sibila nec labiis fridula prome tuis.  
Nec citò sorbebis, velut ovi lutea grati:  
Nec nimium tardâ sume falerna morâ.  
Unum, siue duo, ad summum tria pocula sumes:  
Si hunc numerum excedas, jam mihi potus eris.  
Fac videas quodcumque bibes, modicumque pitissa:  
Crater, siue calix, det tibi vina, brevis.  
Os quoque tergebis semper post pocula; palmas  
Abluè, quum mensam deseris, atque labra.  
Denique jam grates pro donis reddito Christo,  
Qui æternas nobis præparat unus opes.  
Inflexensque genu, jungens & brachia, PROSIT  
Dicito: mox tolles ordine quæque suo.

REGIMEN MENSÆ honorabile.

*Nemo cibum capiat, donec Benedictio fiat.*

Vultus hilares habea-  
Sal cultello capia-  
Quod edendum sit, ne pete-  
Non nisi depositum capia-  
Rixas & murmura fugia-  
Manibus erectis sedea-  
Mappam mundam tenea-  
Ne scalpatis cavea-  
Aliis partem tribua-  
Morsus non rejicia-  
Modicum sed crebrò biba-

Grates DEO per CHRISTUM refera-

*Privetur mensa, qui spreveris hæc documenta.*

F I N I S.

## RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

*In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii & Spiritus Sancti, Amen.*

### ORATIO DOMINICA, *Matth. vi.*

**P**ater noster, qui es in cœlis, 1. Sanctificetur Nomen tuum. 2. Veniat Regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in cœlo, sic etiam in terra. 4. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita nostra, sicut & nos remittimus debitoribus nostris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos a malo. Quia tuum est regnum, & potentia, & gloria, in secula. *Amen.*

### SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

**C**redo in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem cœli & terræ: 2. Et in Jesum Christum, Filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum nostrum, 3. Qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Maria Virgine, 4. Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus & sepultus, descendit ad inferna; 5. Tertio die resurrexit a mortuis. 6. Ascendit ad cœlos, sedet ad dextram Dei patris omnipotentis; 7. Inde venturus est judicatum vivos & mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Credo sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam, Sanctorum communionem; 10. Remissionem peccatorum; 11. Carnis resurrectionem, 12. Vitam æternam. *Amen.*

### DECALOGUS, *sive* LEX DEI.

*Loquutus est DEUS omnia verba hæc. • Exod. xx.*

**E**go sum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex Ægypto, de domo servitutis;

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conspectu meo.

II. Nesculpas tibi simulacrum, nec ullam imaginem similitudinis eorum, quæ aut supra sunt in cœlo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis sub terra: neque incurves te illis, neque servies illis. Ego enim sum Dominus Deus tuus, sortis, zelus,

vindicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia & quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt me, & misericordiâ utens in milleſimam eorum qui diligunt me, & observant præcepta mea.

III. Ne usurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temerè. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanè usurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis, & facies omne opus tuum. At Septimo die Sabbatum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec servus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui est intra portas tuas. Nam sex diebus fecit Deus cœlum, terram, & mare, & quæcunque in iis sunt: requievit autem die septimo, ideoque benedixit diei Sabbati, & sanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum & matrem tuam, ut diu viyas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus est.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium.

X. Non concupisces domum proximi tui, non concupisces uxorem proximi tui, nec servum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec asinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ sunt proximi tui.

**SUMMA LEGIS, *Matth.* xxii. 34.**

**P**harisei, quum audivissent quod JESUS silentium imposuisset Sadduceis, congregati sunt pariter: 35. Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans eum, & dicens, 36. Præceptor noster, quod præceptum maximum est in lege?

37. JESUS autem dixit illi, Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, & ex tota anima tua, & ex omni cogitatione tua. 38. Hoc est præceptum maximum & primum. 39. Secundum autem est simile illi: nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum sicut te ipsum.

40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex & Prophetæ. Quot sunt Christiana Ecclesiæ Sacramenta?

Duo.

Quæ sunt illa?

Baptismus, & sacra Cœna Domini.

## INSTITUTIO BAPTISMI,

*Cujus hæc sunt verba. Matth. xxviii. 19. Mar. xvi. 16.*

**I**Te & docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *in nomine Patris, & Filii, & Spiritus Sancti.* Qui crediderit, & baptizatus fuerit, servabitur: Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut custodiant quicquid mandavi vobis: & ecce ego vobiscum sum omnibus diebus, usque ad consummationem seculi.

*Hæc promissio repetitur, cum Scriptura Baptismum nominat Lavacrum regenerationis, & abluionem peccatorum. Tit. iii. 5. Act. xxii. 16.*

## INSTITUTIO COENÆ DOMINI,

*Cujus hæc sunt verba. 1 Cor. xi. 23.*

**E**Go enim accepi à Domino nostro id quod tradidi vobis. Quòd dominus noster Iesus Christus, eà nocte quâ proditus est, accepit panem: &, gratias agens, fregit, ac dixit: *Accipite, manducate, hoc est corpus meum, quod pro vobis frangitur: Hæc facite ad memoriam mei.* Idem & poculum postquam cenasset, dicendo: *Hoc poculum est novum illud fædus per meum sanguinem: Hæc facite, quotiescunque biberitis, in mei recordationem.* Quotiescunque enim ederitis panem hunc, & poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annuntiabitis, usque quò venerit. Itaque quisquis ederit panem hunc, vel biberit poculum Domini indignè, reus est corporis & sanguinis Domini. Probet autem quisque se ipsum: & ita de pane illo edat, & de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit & bibit indignè, damnationem sibi ipsi edit & bibit, quia non discernit corpus Domini.

*Hæc promissio à Paulo exprimitur, cum inquit;*

**P**oculum gratiarum actionis, quo gratias agimus, nonne communio est sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio est corporis Christi? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi sumus. Nam omnes unius panis participes sumus.



## Summula CATECHISMI.

*Triplex Hominis Status.*

1. } In sanctitate & sanitate. }
2. } Sub peccato & morte. }
3. } Sub Christi gratia. }

## QUÆSTIO.

*Q. Uis hominem creavit?*

*Responsio.* DEUS.

*Q. Qualem creavit eum?*

R. Sanctum & sanum, mundique dominum,

*Q. In quem usum creatus est?*

R. Ut Deo inserviret.

*Q. Quod servitii genus ab eo exigebat Deus?*

R. Legis suæ præstationem.

*Q. Num in legis Dei præstatione perstitit?*

R. Nequaquam: sed eam foedè transgressus est.

*Q. Quæ hujus transgressionis pœna?*

R. Mors æterna, cum animæ, tum corporis, & ipsi & posteris.

*Q. Quomodo inde liberamur?*

R. Merâ Dei gratiâ in Christo Jesu, absque nostris meritis.

*Q. Cujusmodi persona est Christus?*

R. Verè Deus, verèque homo, in persona una.

*Q. Quomodo nos liberavit?*

R. Morte suâ: mortem enim nobis debitam pro nobis subiit, nosque eripuit.

*Q. Num omnes liberantur per Christum?*

R. Minimè, sed ii tantum qui fide eum amplectuntur.

*Q. Quid est fides?*

R. Cum mihi persuadeo, Deum me omnesque Sanctos amare, nobisque Christum cum omnibus suis bonis gratis donare.

*Q. Recense summam tuæ fidei?*

R. Credo in Deum Patrem, &c.

*Q. Quis operatur banc fidem in nobis?*

R. Spiritus Sanctus per Verbum & Sacramenta.

*Q. Quomodo eam operatur per Verbum & Sacramenta?*

R. Aperit cor, ut Deo loquenti in Verbo & Sacramentis credamus.

*Q. Quid est Dei verbum?*

R. Quicquid veteris ac novi Testamenti libris continetur.

*Q. Verbi Dei quot partes?*

R. Duæ, Lex & Evangelium.

*Q. Quid est lex?*

R. Doctrina Dei, debitum à nobis exigens, & quia non su-

## 26 SUMMULA CATECHISMI.

sumus solvendo, damnans.

*Q. Quid Evangelium?*

*R.* Doctrina Christum cum omnibus suis bonis nobis offerens, debitumque nostrum ab eo solutum, nosque liberos esse proclamans.

*Q. Quid Sacramenta?*

*R.* Sigilla Dei, significantia & donantia nobis Christum cum omnibus suis bonis.

*Q. Quæ hæc Christi bona?*

*R.* Amor Dei, Spiritus Sanctus, unio nostri cum Christo; unde remissio peccatorum, sanatio naturæ, spiritualis nutritio, & vita æterna promanant.

*Q. Quot sunt Novi Testamenti Sacramenta?*

*R.* Duo, Baptismus & sacra Cæna.

*Q. Quid est Baptismus?*

*R.* Sacramentum initionis nostræ in Christum, & ablu-tionis à peccatis.

*Q. Quid initio nostri in Christum?*

*R.* Unio nostri cum Christo; unde manat remissio peccatorum & perpetua resipiscencia.

*Q. Baptismus quid juvat fidem?*

*R.* Testatur, ut aquâ corpus abluitur, sic operante Spiritu Sancto, à peccatorum reatu & radice, per fidem in sanguine Christi, nos repurgari.

*Q. Quid est sacra Cæna?*

*R.* Sacramentum spiritualis

nutritionis nostræ in Christo.

*Q. Cæna Domini quid juvat fidem?*

*R.* Testatur, ut pane & vino corpora nostra aluntur & augescunt; sic animas nostras corpore & sanguine Christi crucifixi ali & corroborari ad vitam æternam.

*Q. Corpore & sanguine Christi quomodo alimur?*

*R.* Dum fide percipimus, & Spiritus Sancti, qui una adest, vi, ea nobis applicamus.

*Q. Quando fide percipimus, & nobis applicamus corpus Christi crucifixi?*

*R.* Dum nobis persuademus Christi mortem & crucifixionem non minùs ad nos pertinere, quàm si ipsi nos pro peccatis nostris crucifixi essemus: Persuasio autem hæc est veræ fidei.

*Q. Vera fides quomodo dignoscitur?*

*R.* Per bona opera.

*Q. Quomodo cognoscuntur bona opera?*

*R.* Si Dei legi respondeant.

*Q. Recita Dei legem?*

*R.* Audi Israel, Ego sum Dominus, &c.

*Q. Hæc lex de quibus te admonet?*

*R.* De officio meo erga Deum, & erga proximum.

*Q. Quid officii debes Deo?*

*R.* Supra omnes eum ut amem.

*Q. Quid*

Q. Quid debes proximo?

R. Eum ut amem tanquam me ipsum.

Q. Potis es hæc præstare?

R. Minimè gentium: nam tantisper dum hîc vivimus, habitat in nobis peccatum.

Q. In Dei filiis quid hinc existit?

R. Perennis pugna inter carnem & Spiritum.

Q. In hac pugna quomodo nobis versandum?

R. Assiduè orandum, ut Deus peccata nobis remit-  
tat, imbecillitatemque su-  
stentet.

Q. Quomodo orandum?

R. Ut nos docuit Christus, Pater noster, qui es, &c.

Q. Què tibi persuades, De-  
um donaturum qua petis?

R. Quia orare iussit, polli-  
citusque est, quicquid pete-  
rem in Christi nomine, se  
mihi largiturum.

Q. Quid debes Deo pro tot  
beneficiis?

R. Ut ei gratias agam,  
perpetuèque serviam.

Q. Quomodo Deo servien-  
dum?

R. Ex verbi ipsius præscri-  
pto, ut jam dictum est.

*Præcipua Capita Christianæ Religionis, desumpta è Sacra Scri-  
ptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.*

I. De D E O.

Joan. iv. 24. **D**EUS est Spiritus. . . .  
Apoc. iv. 8. Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus, Dominus Deus omnipotens,  
qui fuit, qui est, & qui venturus est.

Psal. cxlvii. 5. Dominus noster est magnus, multarumque virium, & sapi-  
entia ejus est immensa.

Exod. xxxiv. 6. . . . Jehova, Jehova Deus, misericors & exorabilis,  
longanimis, & abundans benignitate & fide.

Vers. 7. Custodiens misericordiam millibus, condonans iniquitatem, trans-  
gressionem & peccatum, & qui nullo pacto absolvet nocentem.

Deut. vi. 4. Jehova Deus noster est unus Jehova.

Joan. v. 7. Tres sunt qui testantur in cælo, Pater, Sermo & Spiritus San-  
ctus; & hi tres sunt unus.

II. De Creatione, lapsu, peccato & miseriâ Hominis.

Gen. i. 26. **E**T Deus dixit, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram,  
secundum similitudinem nostram.

Vers. 27. Itaque Deus creavit hominem ad imaginem suam, ad imaginem  
Dei creavit eum . . . .

Ecc. vii. 29. Deus fecit hominem rectum, . . . .

Rom. v. 12. Peccatum intravit in mundum per unum hominem, & mors  
per peccatum: & ita mors pervasit ad omnes homines, quatenus omnes pec-  
cârunt.

Rom. iii. 23. Omnes peccaverunt, ac deficiuntur gloriâ Dei.

Psal

*Psal. li. 5.* En formatus sum in iniquitate, & in peccato mater meam cepit me.

### III. De redemptione generis humani per Iesum Christum.

*Joan. iij. 16.* **D**EUS sic amavit mundum, ut dederit filium suum unigenitum, ut quisquis credit in eum, non pereat, sed habeat vitam æternam.

*1 Jo. iv. 9.* Amor Dei patuit erga nos in hoc, quòd Deus misit filium suum unigenitum in mundum, ut vivamus per eum.

*V. 10.* In hoc est amor, non quòd nos dilexerimus Deum, sed quòd ipse dilexerit nos, & miserit filium suum, ut esset piaculum pro peccatis nostris.

*1 Pet. iii. 18.* Christus quoque passus est semel pro peccatis, iustus pro iniustus, ut adduceret nos ad Deum.

*1 Pet. iij. 24.* Qui ipsemet sustulit peccata nostra in suo corpore super lignum, ut nos mortui peccatis, viveremus iustitiæ; cujus vibicibus sanati sumus.

*Tit. ii. 14.* Qui dedit seipsum pro nobis, ut redimeret nos ab omni iniquitate, & purificaret sibi ipsi populum peculiarem, accensum studio bonorum operum.

### IV. De iis quæ Deus à nobis exigit, ut salutem per Christum consequamur.

*Act. xvi. 30.* **D**ixit, Domini, quid faciendum est mihi, ut sim salvus?  
*Ver. 31.* Et illi dixerunt, Crede in Dominum Iesum, & salvus eris.

*Act. iij. 19.* Respiscite, & convertimini, ut peccata vestra deleantur, cum tempora recreationis venient à conspectu Domini.

*Isa. lv. 6.* Querite Jehovah dum possit inveniri; invocate eum dum est propinquus.

*Vers. 7.* Improbus derelinquat viam suam, & vir iniquus cogitationes suas: revertaturque ad Jehovah, & miserebitur illius; & ad Deum nostrum, quia plurimum condonabit.

*Luc. ix. 23.* Si quis vult venire post me, ipse abneget se, tollatque suam crucem quotidie, & sequatur me.

*Matth. xi. 28.* Venite ad me omnes qui laboratis & onerati estis, & ego recreabo vos.

*Ver. 29.* Attollite iugum meum in vos, & discite à me, quia mitis sum & humilis corde; & invenietis requiem animabus vestris.

*Ver. 30.* Iugum enim meum est facile, & onus meum est leve.

*Heb. v. 9.* Perfectus factus est auctor salutis æternæ omnibus obedientibus.

*Jo. xiv. 15.* Si amatis me, servate præcepta mea.

*Jo. xv. 14.* Vos estis amici mei, si feceritis quæcunque ego præcipio vobis.

*Tit. ii. 11.* Gratia Dei, quæ salutem adfert, apparuit omnibus hominibus;

*Ver. 12.* Erudiens nos, ut, abnegatâ impietate & mundanis cupiditatibus, vivamus sobriè, iustè & pie in hoc præsentis seculo.

*Mic. vi. 8.* Indicavit tibi, O homo, quid sit bonum: & quid exigit Jehova à te, nisi ut requiem facias, & ames misericordiam, & ambules submisse cum Deo tuo?

*Col. iii. 5.* Mortificate igitur vestra membra terrestria; scortationem, impuritatem, libidinem, cupiditatem malam, & avaritiâ, quæ est idololatria:

*Ver. 6.* Propter quæ, ira Dei venit super filios contumaces.

*Ver. 8.* . . . Deponite hæc omnia, iram, exandescentiam, malitiam, maledicentiam, obscenitatem verborum ex ore vestro.

*Ver. 9.* Ne mentimini alii aliis.

*Ver. 12.*